

# 38

## OWNERS MANUAL



**DENZA**

**TECHNOLOGY DRIVES ELEGANCE**

# Foreword

Thank you for choosing DENZA. To better use and maintain the vehicle, please read this manual carefully before use and keep it for future reference.

Special instructions: BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. recommends that you choose genuine spare parts and use, maintain, and repair the vehicle in accordance with this manual. The use of non-genuine spare parts to replace or modify the vehicle will affect the performance of the entire vehicle, especially its safety and durability. Vehicle damage and performance issues caused thereby will not be covered by the warranty. In addition, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws and regulations and local government regulations.

Thank you again for choosing DENZA. Your valuable comments and suggestions are welcome. To enjoy better services, please provide your accurate contact information. If there is any change to the information, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider in a timely manner to update the information in the system. You are also advised to pay attention to the relevant national laws and regulations and local policies, and register the vehicle as soon as possible; otherwise vehicle registration may fail.

The descriptions marked with the asterisk (\*) in this manual are specific to only some model configurations, and applicable only when the vehicle has these configurations. If there is any difference with the vehicle you purchased, the configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the "WARNING", "CAUTION" and "REMINDER" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. The hint types are defined as follows:

## **WARNING**


Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

## **CAUTION**

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

## **REMINDER**

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

 is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

Everyone has the responsibility to protect the environment. Please use this vehicle properly and dispose of any waste and cleaning materials according to the corresponding local laws and regulations.

**Copyright © BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.**

**No part of this document may be reproduced, copied, stored, translated, or transmitted electronically or in any other form without prior written consent and authorization of BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd.**

**All rights reserved**

## Illustration Index

Exterior.....	7
Dashboard.....	8
Center Console.....	9
Doors.....	10

## Safety

<b>Seat Belts.....</b>	<b>12</b>
Seat Belt Overview.....	12
Using Seat Belts.....	13
<b>Airbags.....</b>	<b>16</b>
Airbag Overview.....	16
Airbag Types.....	17
Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions.....	20
<b>Child Restraint System.....</b>	<b>24</b>
Child Restraint Systems.....	24
Installing Child Restraint Systems.....	25
<b>Dual-Mode System Working Mode.....</b>	<b>29</b>
Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode.....	29
Selecting Working Mode of the Dual-Mode System.....	30
Precautions for Dual-Mode System Working Mode.....	31
<b>Anti-theft Alarm System.....</b>	<b>33</b>
Anti-theft Alarm System.....	33
<b>Data Collection and Processing.....</b>	<b>34</b>
Data Collection and Processing.....	34
<b>Sentry Mode.....</b>	<b>37</b>
Sentry Mode.....	37

## Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster.....	42
-------------------------	----

Instrument Cluster View.....	42
Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	43

## Controller Operation

<b>Doors and Keys.....</b>	<b>56</b>
Keys.....	56
Locking/Unlocking Doors.....	62
Automatic Window Closing.....	69
Smart Access and Start System.....	69
Electronic Child Protection Lock.....	71
<b>Seats.....</b>	<b>71</b>
Seat Precautions.....	71
Adjusting Front Seats.....	72
Adjusting Second-Row Seats.....	75
Adjusting Rear Seats.....	77
Head Supports.....	77
Seat Ventilation.....	80
Seat Massage.....	80
Adjusting Seats*.....	80
Seat Mode.....	81
<b>Steering Wheel.....</b>	<b>82</b>
Steering Wheel Switches.....	82
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	84
<b>Wipers.....</b>	<b>85</b>
Wiper Switch.....	85
Replacing Wiper Blades.....	87
<b>Mirrors.....</b>	<b>88</b>
Interior Rearview Mirrors.....	88
Power Side Mirrors.....	89
<b>Switches.....</b>	<b>90</b>
Light Switches.....	90
Driver's Door Switches.....	93
Custom Button on Interior Door.....	95

Window Control Switch on Passenger's Side.....	95
Odometer Switch.....	96
Hazard Warning Light Switch.....	96
Sunroof Switch.....	96
Interior Light Switches.....	98
Trunk Switches.....	99
Second-Row Control Panel.....	100

## Using and Driving

### Charging/Discharging Instructions.. 104

Charging Instructions.....	104
Charging.....	107
Discharging Equipment.....	114
Target SOC Setting.....	117
Charging Port Immobilizer System.....	119

### Batteries..... 121

High-Voltage Battery.....	121
Low-Voltage Battery.....	122

### Usage Precautions..... 124

Break-in Period.....	124
Trailer Towing.....	124
Driving Safety Precautions.....	125
Vehicle Use Suggestions.....	126
Fuel.....	126

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life.....	128
---	-----

Carrying Luggage.....	129
-----------------------	-----

Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning.....	131
---	-----

Fire Prevention.....	131
----------------------	-----

Snow Chains.....	133
------------------	-----

### Starting and Driving.....134

Starting the Vehicle.....	134
---------------------------	-----

Driving.....	135
--------------	-----

Driving Mode.....	137
-------------------	-----

Differential Lock.....	149
------------------------	-----

Intelligent Hydraulic Control System (YunNian-P).....	150
---	-----

Fuel-Efficient Driving.....	156
-----------------------------	-----

Gear Shift Controls.....	157
--------------------------	-----

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).....	159
-------------------------------------	-----

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH).....	162
-----------------------------------	-----

Driving Precautions.....	163
--------------------------	-----

### Driver Assistance..... 166

About the Driver Assistance System.....	166
---	-----

Driving Assist.....	172
---------------------	-----

Safety Assist.....	182
--------------------	-----

Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC)..	209
--	-----

Head-up Display (HUD)* ..	210
---------------------------	-----

Tire Pressure Monitoring.....	211
-------------------------------	-----

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS).....	212
--	-----

Around View Monitor (AVM).....	213
--------------------------------	-----

Parking Assist.....	215
---------------------	-----

Driver Monitoring System (DMS).....	219
-------------------------------------	-----

Driving Safety Systems.....	220
-----------------------------	-----

Night Vision System* ..	224
-------------------------	-----

## In-Vehicle Devices

### Infotainment System..... 230

Infotainment Touchscreen.....	230
-------------------------------	-----

Infotainment System.....	231
--------------------------	-----

Gestures and Responses.....	232
-----------------------------	-----

OTA Update.....	233
-----------------	-----

BYD Assistant.....	233
--------------------	-----

Scenario Mode.....	234
--------------------	-----

Bluetooth call.....	236
---------------------	-----

External Applications.....	237
----------------------------	-----

Speakers.....	237
---------------	-----

My Car.....	238
Phone Projection.....	238
<b>A/C System.....</b>	<b>240</b>
Illustration of A/C Panel.....	240
A/C Operation Interface.....	240
Function Definition.....	241
Vents.....	244
<b>BYD App.....</b>	<b>245</b>
About BYD App*.....	245
Account Registration*.....	245
Vehicle Condition and Control*.....	245
Individual Center and Vehicle Management*.....	246
<b>Storage.....</b>	<b>246</b>
Door Bins.....	246
Glove Box.....	246
Seatback Pockets.....	246
Glasses Case.....	246
Cup Holders.....	247
<b>Refrigerator.....</b>	<b>248</b>
Refrigerator.....	248
<b>Other Devices.....</b>	<b>251</b>
Sun Visor.....	251
Grab Handles.....	251
Auxiliary Handles.....	252
USB Ports.....	252
On-board Power Supply.....	253
Wireless Phone Charger.....	254

## Maintenance

<b>Maintenance Precautions.....</b>	<b>258</b>
Maintenance Cycle and Items.....	258
<b>Regular Maintenance.....</b>	<b>269</b>
Regular Maintenance.....	269

Vehicle Corrosion Prevention.....	270
Paint Maintenance Tips.....	270
Vehicle Cleaning.....	271
Interior Cleaning.....	273
<b>Self-Maintenance.....</b>	<b>274</b>
Self-Maintenance.....	274
Sunroof Maintenance.....	277
Vehicle Storage.....	277
Hood.....	278
Engine.....	278
Cooling System.....	279
Braking System.....	281
Windshield Washer.....	281
A/C System.....	282
Wiper Blade Maintenance.....	282
Tires.....	283
Fuses.....	285

## When Faults Occur

<b>When Faults Occur.....</b>	<b>288</b>
Reflective Vest.....	288
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted.....	288
If a High Voltage Fault Occurs.....	288
If the Vehicle Cannot Be Powered On... ..	289
If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving.....	289
If the Engine is Overheated.....	290
If the Vehicle Needs Towing.....	290
If a Tire Goes Flat.....	292
Using the Spare Tire.....	294

## Technical Data

<b>Vehicle Data.....</b>	<b>300</b>
Specifications.....	300

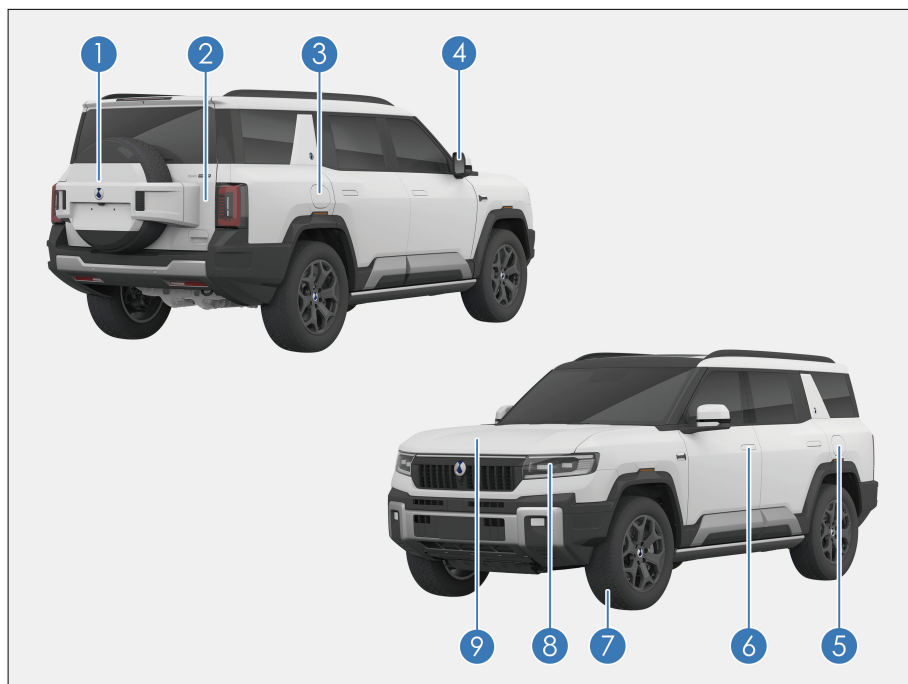
**Information.....304**  
Vehicle Identification..... 304  
Warning Labels..... 305  
Transponder Mounting Position.....307  
**Declarations of Conformity..... 308**  
Declarations of Conformity.....308

## **Abbreviations**

**Abbreviations..... 317**

# Illustration Index

## Exterior



1 Replacing the Spare Tire **P295**

2 Tailgate **P66**

3 Check Before Charging **P107**

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable\* **P107**

Using AC Charger\* **P110**

Using DC Charger\* **P111**

4 Power Side Mirrors **P89**

5 Refueling **P127**

6 Locking/Unlocking Doors **P63**

7 Tires **P283**

If a Tire Goes Flat **P292**

8 Light Switches **P90**

9 Hood **P278**

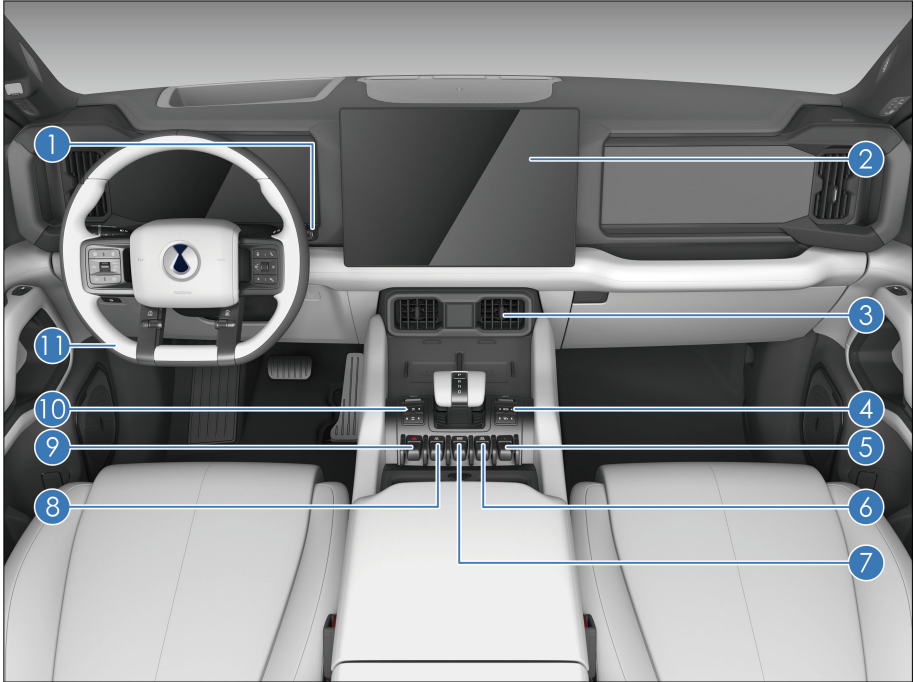
Engine Oil **P279**

Cooling System **P279**

Braking System **P281**

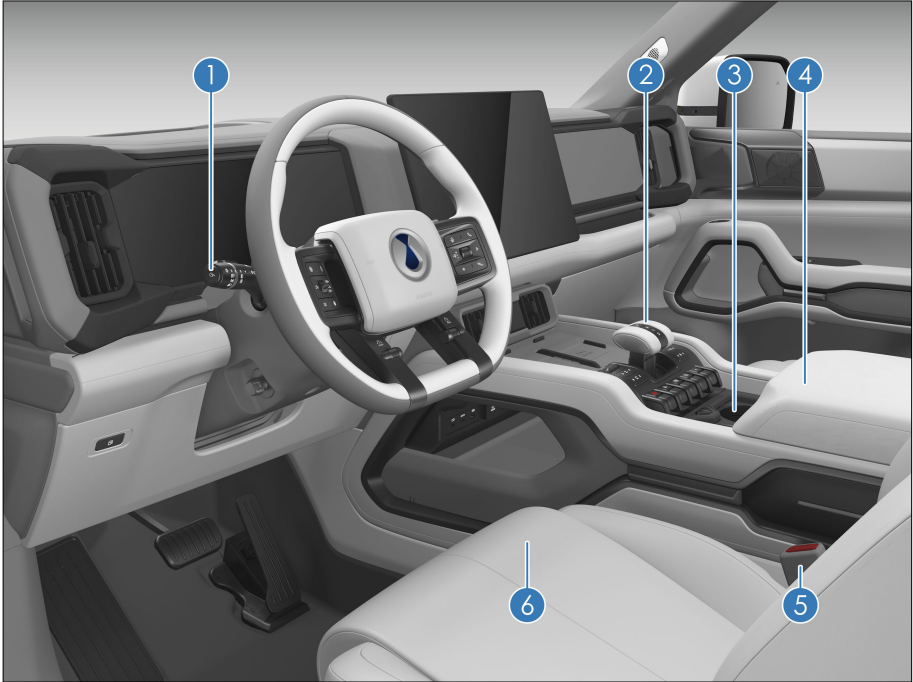
Windshield Washer **P281**

# Dashboard



- |   |   |    |                                      |
|---|---|----|--------------------------------------|
| 1 | Front Windshield Wipers and Washer <b>P85</b> | 6  | Driving Mode Button <b>P137</b>      |
|   | Rear Windshield Wipers and Washer <b>P86</b>  | 7  | START/STOP Button <b>P134</b>        |
| 2 | Infotainment Touchscreen <b>P230</b>          | 8  | EV/HEV Mode Switch Button <b>P30</b> |
| 3 | Front Center Vents <b>P244</b>                | 9  | Hazard Warning Light <b>P96</b>      |
| 4 | Front A/C Panel <b>P240</b>                   | 10 | Differential Lock <b>P149</b>        |
| 5 | L Button <b>P137</b>                          | 11 | Steering Wheel Switches <b>P82</b>   |

# Center Console



1 Light Switches **P90**

2 Gear Shift Controls **P157**

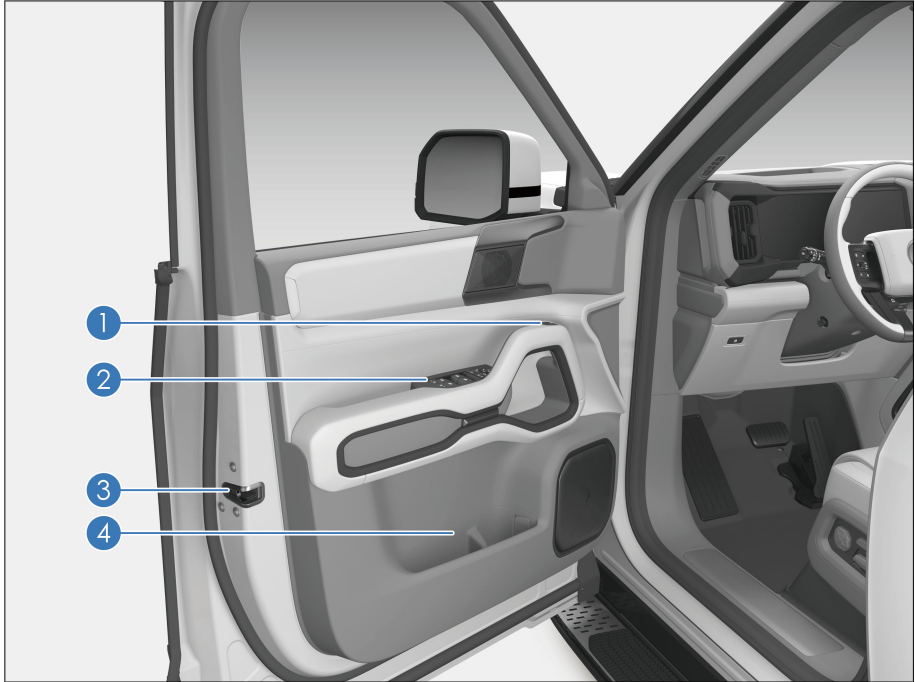
3 Cup Holders **P247**

4 Refrigerator **P248**

5 Using Seat Belts **P13**

6 Seats **P71**

# Doors



1 Door Control Button **P63**

2 Power Window Switches **P93**

Central Locking **P68**

Side Mirror Adjustment **P89**

3 Emergency Vehicle Locking with  
Mechanical Key **P68**

4 Door Bins **P246**

# 01

## SAFETY

Seat Belts.....	12
Airbags.....	16
Child Restraint System.....	24
Dual-Mode System Working Mode...	29
Anti-theft Alarm System.....	33
Data Collection and Processing.....	34
Sentry Mode.....	37

# Seat Belts

## Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering or collisions. Read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

### WARNING

- Before driving, make sure all occupants are properly buckled up to prevent personal injury or even death in emergency braking or in a collision.
  - The seat belts are designed primarily to fit adults and are not intended for children. Make sure to choose a child restraint system appropriate for your child's age and size (see **P24**).
  - If a seat belt is damaged or malfunctions, immediately contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
- 
- All occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle to avoid personal injury or death in case of an accident.
  - Children are encouraged to travel on the second row seats and must be buckled up in appropriate child restraint systems. In case of emergency braking or a collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Likewise, do not allow children to ride on someone's lap. This will render the children not adequately protected.

## Emergency Locking Retractor

- When the driver turns sharply or brakes suddenly, when there is a collision, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- When the vehicle travels smoothly, seat belts are pulled out and retracted as the occupants move slowly and smoothly, allowing the occupants to move freely.
- If the seat belt locks due to sudden retraction, pull on the seat belt webbing to create retractable slack to pull out the seat belt.


## Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function\*

When a severe front collision occurs and the triggering conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to improve the protection of the occupant. The force limiter limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

## Seat Belt Pretensioning by Motor\*

- The seat belt automatically retracts in a hazardous situation to effectively secure the driver and passengers, and automatically returns to its relaxed state after the hazardous situation is resolved.

## Webbing pretensioning

- Enable or disable pre-tightening safety belt on the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Drive** → **Driving Control**.
- After the vehicle is started and the occupants fasten their seat belts, the

motor drives the webbing to retract to reduce the possible excessive slack of seat belts.

#### ! REMINDER

- Do not pull out the belt webbing forcibly during motor start-up, otherwise the webbing may not be pulled out. If that happens, pull out the webbing with a greater force and insert the buckle for pretensioning.
- After the motor performs seat belt pretensioning, adjust the seat belt if it is too tight.

#### High-speed pretensioning

- In case of emergency braking in situations such as urgent avoidance, front collision, rear collision and side collision, the motor is activated in advance to retract the webbing in a pre-tensioning manner to minimize the impact damage to occupants.
- When the driver's emergency braking is detected, the motor pre-tightening seat belt will start the high-speed braking pre-tightening, and the dashboard will pop up the pop-up window of "high-speed braking pre-tightening protection".

#### ! REMINDER

- If the seat belt cannot be released, move the seatback slightly backwards until the tension of the seat belt decreases and the locking mechanism unlocks.

#### AEB linkage pre-collision high-power pre-tightening

- When the automatic emergency braking system (AEB) recognizes that the vehicle is in a dangerous state of possible collision, the motor pre-

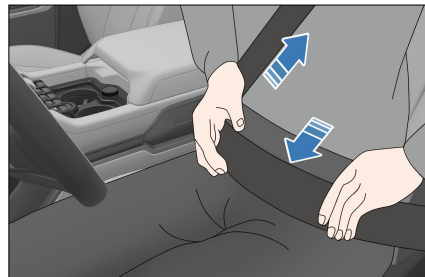
tightens the maximum power of the seat belt to recover the webbing, and actively pre-tightens it before collision. At this time, the dashboard will pop up the pop-up window of "AEB brake pre-tightening protection".

#### ! REMINDER

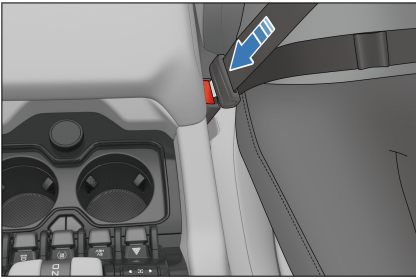
- If the seat belt cannot be released, move the seatback slightly backwards until the tension of the seat belt decreases and the locking mechanism unlocks.

## Using Seat Belts

1. Adjust the seat position and seatback angle (See **P72**).
2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.
  - Keeping a proper sitting posture, pull the seat belt out so that it is diagonally across the chest. The belt should not go under the arm or across the back of the neck.
  - Keep the lap section of the belt as close as possible to the hips.

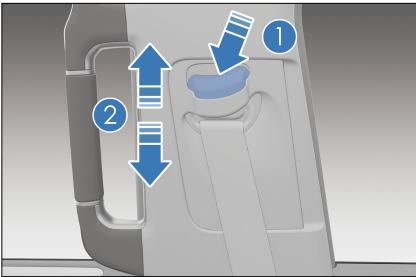


3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks, and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.



4. Adjust the height of the (front) seat belts for optimum comfort and protection.

- ① Press the adjuster release button.
- ② Move the adjuster up or down to the intended position. Release the button to lock the adjuster.



5. Pull the belt firmly to check that the adjuster is locked.

**! WARNING**

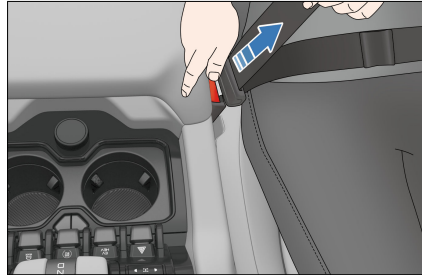
- The shoulder belt should cross the center of the shoulder, The seat belt should be far from the neck and not be liable to slip from the shoulder, otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury due to the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.

**! WARNING**

- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

6. Unlock the seat belt.

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts.
- If the seat belt does not retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out and check whether it is twisted.



**! WARNING**

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Do not allow multiple occupants (including children) to share one seat belt.
- Avoid traveling with the seatback leaning too far back. The seat belt protection performs best when the seatback is upright.
- Make sure that no seat belt or its spring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door; otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly. for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and

**WARNING**

handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.

- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the seat belts.
- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. Seat belts with pretensioner function activated must be replaced.
- Use an approved model whenever you replace the seat belt.
- In the event of a serious accident, even if there is no apparent damage, the seat belt should be replaced along with the seat assembly. The airbag system should also be thoroughly inspected.
- Pregnant women need to fasten the seat belts properly and position the lapbelt as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury from the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The method of wearing a second row and rear row seat belt is the same as that for a front seat belt. For normal functioning of the second row and rear row seat belt, ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should remind passengers to wear seat belts properly.
- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.

**Seat Belt Reminders**

If any occupant has not buckled up after the vehicle is started, visual and audible alarms go on and continue until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Seat belt reminder indicator

Any unfastened seat belt triggers this indicator to light up and flash as required.

- Display of unfastened seat belt

The indicator for the seat with unfastened seat belt lights up and is steady on in case of abnormal conditions in the vehicle.

- Unfastened seat belt reminder

If any front or second-row occupants has not buckled up after the ignition is switched on, the seat belt reminder indicator and the indicator associated with the corresponding seat light up. If the seat belt remains unfastened while driving, in addition to the reminder indicator, an audible alarm is given to alert the driver and the occupants.

- When the driver and passengers have buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator turns off and all indicators displayed for the corresponding seats turn off on the instrument cluster.

**WARNING**

- If the above functions are abnormal or fail, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. Do not use the seat until the function is restored.
- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened to prevent personal injury or even death

 **WARNING**

in emergency braking or in a collision.

# Airbags

## Airbag Overview


- Airbags are a part of the supplemental restraint system (SRS) and also a supplement to seats and seat belts. When the vehicle is involved in a serious collision and the airbag system meets its deployment conditions, relevant airbags will rapidly deploy and, along with seat belts, provide additional protection for heads and chests of the occupants to reduce the risk of personal injury or even death.
- Airbags are divided into front and side types according to the type of collision in which they are designed to deploy. The front airbags include a driver and a front passenger airbag. The side airbags include front seat side airbags, second-row seat side airbags, side curtain airbags, and a far-side airbag.
- As an integral part of the vehicle's passive safety protection system, the airbag system does not replace seat belts, and must be used in combination with seat belts to maximize protection.

 **WARNING**

- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximize the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble airbag components.

 **WARNING**

- Non-BYD genuine seat covers may worsen the airbag performance or result in injury. Do not place anything between the side airbag and the occupant.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of seats equipped with side airbags.
- After a collision, even if the airbag module did not deploy and the pretensioner did not lock the seat belt, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for airbag testing.

 Airbag warning light

- The airbag system is monitored by the ECU and has a self-diagnostic function. The system status is indicated by the warning light on the instrument cluster.
- When the power supply of the whole vehicle is in the "ON" gear, the airbag warning lamp lights up for about 5 seconds and then goes out, indicating that the system is normal.

 **WARNING**

- If the airbag warning light is solid on, it indicates that the system is out of order. It is recommended to check the airbag system at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible, otherwise the function of the airbag will be affected.
- If the vehicle is ingressed with water (wet carpet or vehicle submerged in water) or damaged by water, do not start the vehicle and the low-voltage battery needs

**! WARNING**

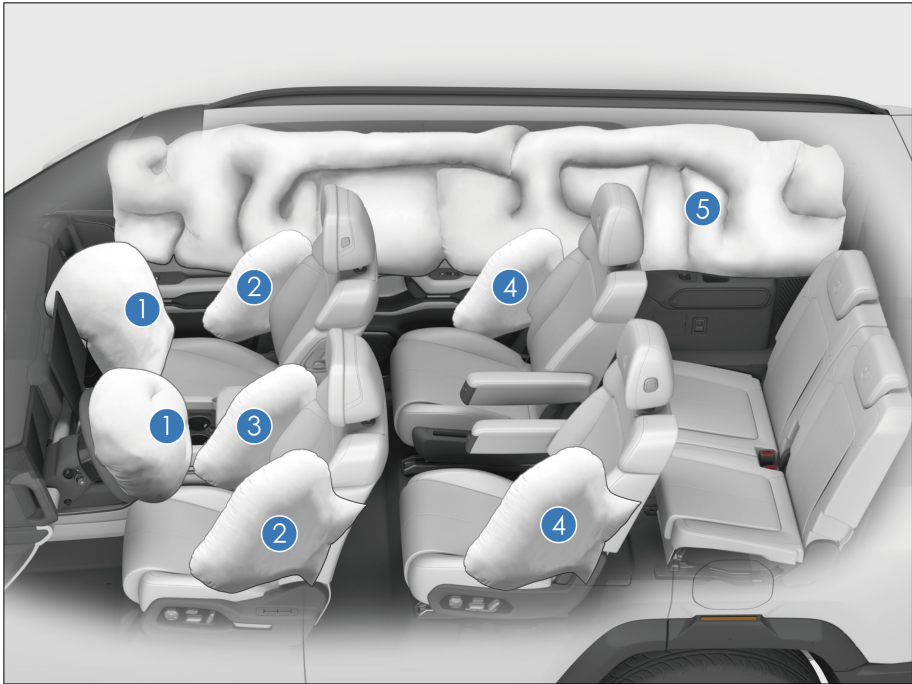
to be disconnected. Otherwise, the airbags may deploy, resulting in serious injury or death.

## Airbag Types

Seven seaters



Six seaters



① Driver and front passenger airbags

② Front seat side airbags

③ Front far side airbag

⑤ second-row seat side airbags

④ Side curtain airbags

### Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

The driver airbag is mounted inside the steering wheel and the front passenger airbag is mounted inside the dashboard, both marked with "AIRBAG". The airbags deploy when the airbag system Electronic Control Unit (ECU) detects a moderate to severe front impact and the triggering conditions are met.

### Front airbag deployment

- In moderate to severe frontal crashes, a sensor detects a sharp deceleration and sends a signal to the ECU to trigger the front airbags.
- When there is a frontal crash, the seat belt secures the occupant's lower body

and torso in place. The airbag cushions and protects the occupant's head and chest.

- When the severity of the impact does not reach the airbag deployment threshold, seat belts provide enough protection.
- The front airbag deflates immediately after inflation, without affecting the driver's vision and ability to operate the steering wheel or other controls.
- The airbag deploys rapidly within a very short time to further protect drivers and occupants in an accident.

- A loud noise will be heard when the airbag deploys. It will not cause injury, but it may cause tinnitus or temporary deafness.
- A cloud of dust from the airbag surface may come off when the airbag deploys. Although such powder is non-toxic, individuals with respiratory problem might experience some temporary discomfort.

**! WARNING**

- No accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, may be installed on airbag covers or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

**Seat Side Airbags**

The seat side airbags are mounted on the outside of seatbacks, marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to protect the chest of the occupant on the impacted side.

**! WARNING**

- Do not wet the seatbacks, in case the side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not cover or replace seatback covers on your own. Unsuitable seatback covers may prevent airbag deployment in a collision.
- In the event of a side impact, the airbag on the impacted side deploys when the airbag system meets its deployment conditions.

**! WARNING**

- For optimal side airbag protection, occupants must have their seat belts fastened and sit upright against the seatback.

**In a vehicle equipped with seat side airbags:**

- Prevent the seatbacks from getting wet. If the seatbacks get wet from rain or splashes, the side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not cover or replace seatback covers on your own. Unsuitable seatback covers may prevent airbag deployment in a collision.

**Side Curtain Airbags**

- The left and right side curtain airbags are mounted at the junctions of the side wall and the ceiling, marked with "AIRBAG" on the B and C pillars. When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions of the side curtain airbag are met, the side curtain airbag deploys to protect the head of the occupant on the impacted side.
- For optimum curtain airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

**Front Far Side Airbag**

- The front far side airbag is mounted on the inner side of the driver's seatback and marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected after vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the far side airbag deploys to protect the heads and shoulders of the driver and the front passenger.

- If the impact occurs on the front passenger's side, the far side airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- For optimum protection from the driver far side airbag, the occupant must have the seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

#### **In a vehicle equipped with front far side airbags:**

- Prevent the seatbacks from getting wet. If the seatbacks get wet from rain or splashes, the far side airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not cover or replace seatback covers on your own. Unsuitable seatback cover replacements or covers may prevent airbag deployment in a collision.

## **Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions**

- Airbag triggering conditions: The airbag system may be triggered in certain collisions. Whether a vehicle collision will trigger the airbag(s) is decided by factors such as the amount of collision energy, accident type, collision angle, obstacles and vehicle speed.
- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.
- Determinants of airbag system triggering: The electronic control unit (ECU) captures the deceleration curve and other signals of the vehicle during a crash. If they are lower than the threshold values set in the

ECU, the airbag system will not be triggered even if the vehicle is seriously deformed in the accident.

- The ECU of the DENZA airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

#### **Rollover Protection System\***

- If the vehicle experiences a side rollover accident that triggers the rollover protection system, the seat side airbags, side curtain airbags, front far-side airbag, and seat belt pretensioners will be activated to protect the occupants and mitigate potential injuries.

#### **Airbag rollover suppression**

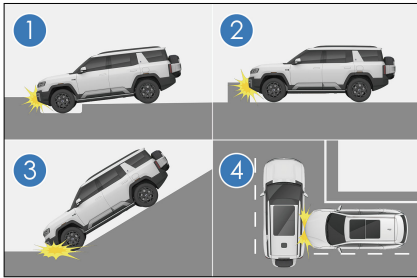
- The user can enable or disable airbag rollover inhibitor switch by the infotainment touchscreen → Driving mode App.
- After the switch is turned on, when the side rollover accident occurs, the pre-tightening functions of the side airbag, the air curtain, the front far side airbag and the seat belt will not be activated to protect the passengers. However, when the side is severely impacted, the rollover induction protection system may still be activated to explode the pre-tightening functions of the side airbag, the air curtain and the seat belt.
- After the switch is turned on, the instrument displays the "RSCA OFF" indicator "; when the vehicle is restarted and powered on, the

roll-over sensing protection system function is activated by default.

- After the switch is turned on, if it needs to be turned off, please click the switch button or power on and off the vehicle once.

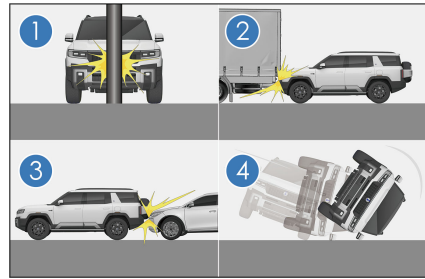
### Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed

- ① The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.
- ② The vehicle hits a bump or curbstone.
- ③ The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.
- ④ One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

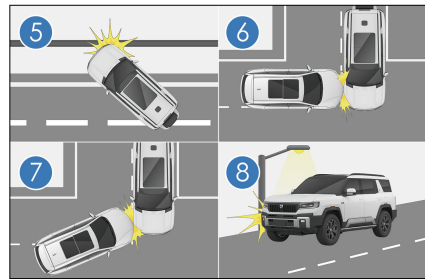


### Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed

- ① The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.
- ② The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.
- ③ The tail of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.
- ④ The vehicle rolls over.



- ⑤ The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.
- ⑥ Parts other than the cabin receive side impact.
- ⑦ The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.
- ⑧ The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.



### WARNING

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any changes to suspension, tire size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system on other vehicle models; doing so may lead to failure of the airbag system.
- Drivers should maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between their chest and the steering wheel, in

 **WARNING**

order for the system to provide the most effective protection.

- When the airbag system deploys, the airbag reaction high temperature gas will be discharged from the airbag vent. Drivers should avoid touching its parts and keep hands holding the steering wheel in the correct position, otherwise there is a possibility of burns when the airbag deploys.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion. If the seat belt is not fastened, and the occupant is leaning forward or sitting improperly, airbag deployment can increase the risk of injury.
- Do not paste stickers, cover or decorate the hub cover of the steering wheel, the right side surface of the dashboard at and near the location of the airbag, the surface of A, B, and C-pillar trims, far side airbag or the surface at and near the location of seat side airbags with any object. Clean these surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.
- A child is not to be seated in the front passenger seat, nor are they to ride sitting on a front passenger's lap, to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment in an accident.
- Side airbags and side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors of vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are

 **WARNING**

in motion. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or even death.

- Do not place any other accessories or items within the action range of side curtain airbags, including the windshield, side door glass, A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and auxiliary handles. When the side curtain airbag deploys, the accessories or items will be thrown by the impact force from the side air curtain airbag, or the side curtain airbag may not deploy normally, resulting in serious injury or even death.
- When transferring vehicle ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents and keep the new ownership informed of airbag conditions.
- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation


## WARNING

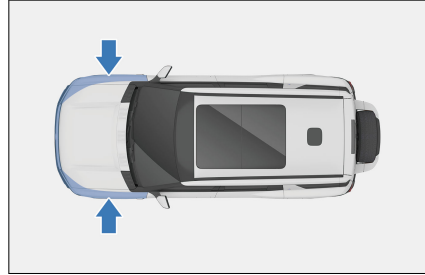
done to the airbags be performed by a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of domestic common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

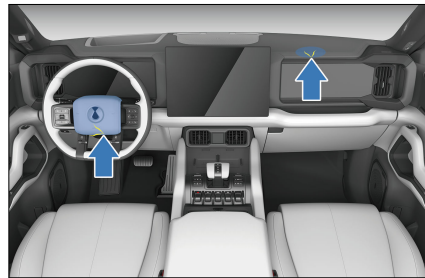
**It is recommended that you contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.**

- Any airbag has deployed.

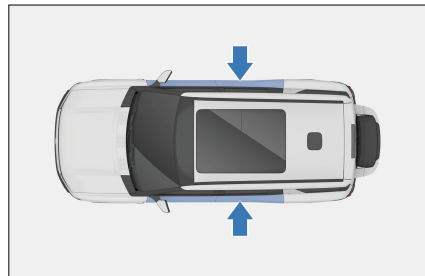
- Instrument cluster airbag warning light  lights up abnormally.
- There is a collision with the front of the vehicle (highlighted area shown), but the airbags do not deploy.



- The airbag cover (highlighted area shown) has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.
- There is a collision with the vehicle door (highlighted area shown) that is not adequate to cause the airbag to deploy.



- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Decorative (liner) parts at A-pillar with built-in curtain airbags, roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.

## Child Restraint System

### Child Restraint Systems

- Choose a suitable child restraint system for your child's age and stature. A child who cannot use a protection device for size reason must sit in the rear seat and have the seat belt fastened properly.
- Please correctly fix the child restraint system not used to a seat. Do not place it on a passenger seat or in the trunk arbitrarily.
- Child restraint systems provide effective protection to children in an accident. For child safety, carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and this manual before installing a child restraint.

#### WARNING

- Be sure to use a seat belt or child restraint system for a child based on his/her age and size, so as to effectively protect the child in an accident or emergency stop. Holding a child in arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child may be crushed against the windshield or between you and the cabin.

#### WARNING

- Vehicles with side curtain airbags: Even though a child is in the child restraint system, do not allow his/her head or any other body part against any door, seat, front/rear pillar or roof side beam (which will be affected when side curtain airbags deploy). Otherwise, the considerable impact force generated when the curtain airbags deploy will cause serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Please follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer to make sure the child restraint it is properly installed in the vehicle. Otherwise, emergency parking or an accident may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Children are not allowed to stand in the car or kneel on the seat when the car is moving to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or collision.
- DENZA strongly suggests you to install child restraint systems. Researches indicate that it is safer to install child restraints on the rear seats than the front seats.
- Never carry a child on your lap while travelling.
- After the child restraint is dismantled from the seat, store it safely in your vehicle.

Children must be secured in a suitable child restraint in a comfortable and safe way when traveling in the vehicle. Make sure that the child restraint is positioned, mounted, and used correctly.

#### Important considerations for selecting a child restraint

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the seating position.
- The child restraint must be homologated by ECE R44/ECE R129.

## Installing Child Restraint Systems

Follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer. Secure the child restraints to the second-row seats. The second-row seats are equipped with ISOFIX anchors for child restraints. Make sure to fasten the top tether when installing a child restraint.

### Installing Child Restraint Systems with ISOFIX Rigid Anchor (seven seaters)

- The second row outboard seats are equipped with special anchorages. (A label indicating the anchoring position is attached to the seat.)
- The second-row seats are equipped with anchorages on the back.



#### Installing a child restraint

1. Open the ISOFIX-labeled covers on both the left and right sides. Check the position of the special anchorage and install the child restraint on the seat.

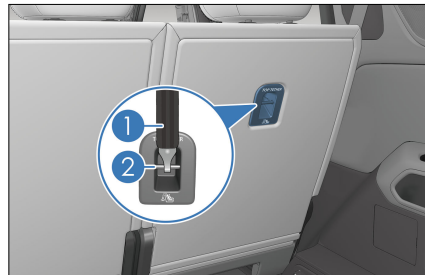


#### ! REMINDER

- The fixing rod is arranged on the upper part of the seat cushion near the backrest.

2. Lift the head support, engage the hook tightly to the anchorage at the back of the seatback, and tighten the top tether so that it is fastened.

- ① Top tether
- ② Anchorage



3. Adjust the head support to a proper position.

### Installing Child Restraint Systems with ISOFIX Rigid Anchor (six seaters)

- The second-row seats are equipped with special anchorages. (A label indicating the anchoring position is attached to the seat.)
- The second-row seats are equipped with anchorages on the back.



### Installing a child restraint

1. Open the ISOFIX-labeled covers fully on both the left and right sides. Check the position of the special anchorage and install the child restraint on the seat.

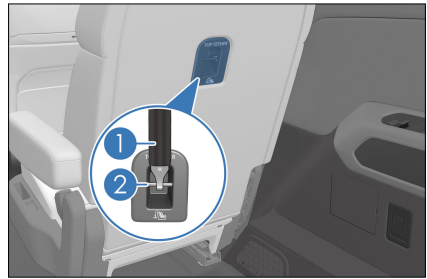


#### **!** REMINDER

- The fixing rod is arranged below the backrest and close to the cushion.

2. Lift the head support, engage the hook tightly to the anchorage at the back of the seatback, and tighten the top tether so that it is fastened.

- ① Top tether
- ② Anchorage



3. Adjust the head support to a proper position.

- If the driver's seat obstructs the correct installation of the child restraint, install it on the right-hand seat of the second row.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the seat protected by a front airbag (in the active state), otherwise in the event of an accident, the force of rapid deployment of the front passenger airbag will result in death or serious injury to the child.



#### **!** WARNING

- Push/Pull the child restraint in different directions to ensure it is securely installed.
- When using the lower anchoring device, make sure that no foreign objects are around the anchoring device and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint; make sure that the

**! WARNING**

child restraint is securely fixed, otherwise emergency parking or an accident may result in serious even fatal injury to a child.

- Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger seat.
- Do not allow children to play with seat belts, otherwise, this could result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harness, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

**Always follow the instructions below when using a child restraint on a rear seat:**

- When the child restraint system is installed on any rear seats, front seats

can be adjusted forward to ensure that the child is not in contact with the front seats. Meanwhile, the front seatback angle can also be adjusted to get more space. If the driver's seat obstructs or interferes with the correct installation of the child restraint system (CRS), install it in the rear seat behind the front passenger seat.

- The head support can be adjusted or even removed to ensure that the vehicle seatback can safely support the child restraint system.
- When a child restraint is not equipped with the seatback, never remove the head support from the vehicle and be sure to adjust it to the locking position.
- When the top tether is used on a outboard rear seat, route it at the outside of each head post.
- For more installation instructions, please read the instructions provided with your child restraint system.

**Details on child restraint system installation:**

Type	Seating Position				
	Driver	Front passenger <sup>a)</sup>	Second-row left <sup>b)</sup>	Second-row middle <sup>*b)</sup>	Second-row right <sup>b)</sup>
Seating position suitable for universal belt (Yes/No)	×	×	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	×	×	No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture	×	×	No	No	No

Type	Seating Position				
	Driver	Front passenger <sup>a)</sup>	Second-row left <sup>b)</sup>	Second-row middle <sup>*b)</sup>	Second-row right <sup>b)</sup>
(L1/L2/No)					
Largest suitable rearward-facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	×	×	R1/R2X/R2/R3	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3
Largest suitable forward-facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	×	×	F2X/F2/F3	No	F2X/F2/F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)	×	×	B2/B3	No	B2/B3

<sup>a)</sup> If needed, adjust the seat position and seatback angle.

<sup>b)</sup> If needed, adjust or even remove the headrest. The front seats can be adjusted to ensure the child is not in contact with them.

× : seat position not suitable for installing a child restraint for this weight group

• Recommended child restraint systems:  
Grouping of child stature according to ECE R129 standard

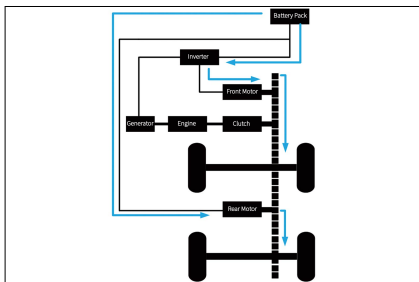
Child Stature (cm)	Manufacturer	Child Restraint System	Notes
< 83	MaxiCosi	Moda	ISOFIX and Belted
76-105	Britax Safe	Graphene	ISOFIX and Belted
< 135	Britax Safe	Hi-liner SG	Belted
< 150	Britax Safe	KidGuard	Belted

# Dual-Mode System Working Mode

## Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode

### EV—Pure Electric Mode

- In Electric Vehicle (EV) mode, the high-voltage battery provides electricity to the motor to drive the vehicle in a variety of working conditions, such as starting, reversing, idling, accelerating, and driving at a constant speed.



### ! REMINDER

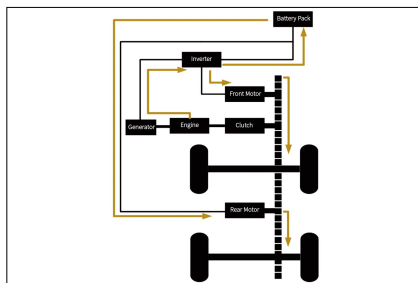
- The vehicle may switch to HEV mode automatically under operating conditions such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, grade climbing, too high or too low temperature, or low SOC level. Switch to EV mode manually if needed when EV conditions are met. It is recommended to choose HEV mode under high or low temperature conditions.

### HEV—Dual mode

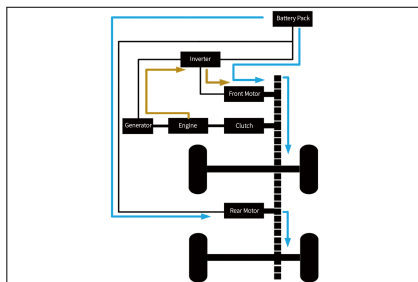
- In Hybrid Electric Vehicles (HEV) mode, the vehicle will be driven by pure

electricity for priority when the engine does not start when the battery is high or the power is low. As shown in the pure electric operation mode illustration.

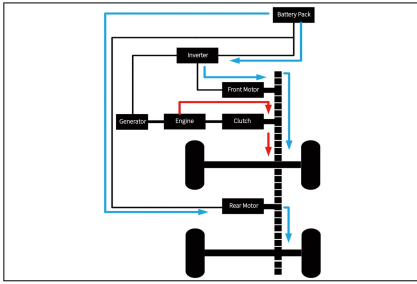
- In HEV mode, the engine starts to enter the series mode to meet the power performance demand when the battery is low or the power is high.
- In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity for battery charging and motor working.



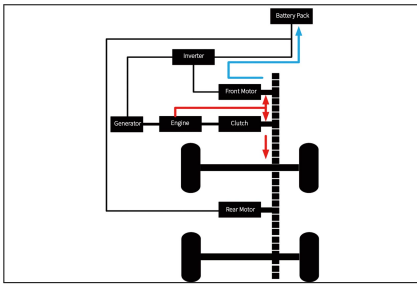
- In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity and the battery discharges for drive motor working.



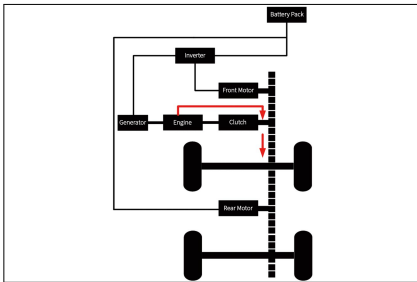
- In HEV mode, the engine starts in parallel mode under some working conditions to improve fuel economy at medium and high speeds.
- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor rests.



- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor generates electricity for energy recycling.

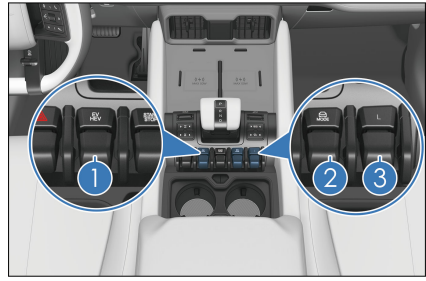


- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor rests.



## Selecting Working Mode of the Dual-Mode System

- ① "EV/HEV" mode button
- ② Driving mode button
- ③ L Button\*



### ! REMINDER

- For information about the driving mode button and L button\*, see **P137** for details.

### EV- eco drive mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Turn the scroll button on the steering wheel until the "ECO" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to minimize battery power consumption.

### EV- comfort drive mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Turn the scroll button on the steering wheel until the "NORMAL" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in NORMAL mode to balance comfort and battery power consumption.

### EV-Sport mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Turn the scroll button on the steering wheel until the "SPORT" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode.

indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to ensure better dynamics.

### HEV- eco drive mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Turn the scroll button on the steering wheel until the ECO" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in Ecology, Conservation, Optimization (ECO) to provide the best fuel economy.

### HEV- comfort drive mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Turn the scroll button on the steering wheel until the "NORMAL" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in NORMAL mode to balance comfort and fuel consumption.

### HEV-Sport mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button on the steering wheel until the "SPORT" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to provide the best dynamics.

## Precautions for Dual-Mode System Working Mode

**The vehicle operates under the combination of fuel and electricity. Pay special attention to the followings:**

- In low temperature environment, the performance of high-voltage battery will decline. To prevent the high-voltage battery from being damaged, the following protection mechanisms are set:
  - When the temperature is low, the vehicle will limit the charging and discharging power and SOC level.
  - If the temperature is lower than -30 °C or higher than 60 °C, the vehicle cannot be charged.
  - If the temperature is lower than -35 °C or higher than 60 °C, the vehicle cannot be discharged.
  - It is recommended to use vehicles in an environment above -20 °C. In case of the above special environment, it is recommended to use the engine to drive the vehicle.
- The best operating temperature of the battery is 25 °C. When the temperature is too high or too low, the battery limits the output power and shortens the purely electric mileage.

### Attention to High-voltage and High-temperature Components

- The high-voltage battery and other high-voltage components of the vehicle are connected by orange cables.

#### **WARNING**

- Do not touch the orange cable or the high-voltage battery

 **WARNING**

electrode. Electric shock may cause serious injury or even be life-threatening.

- Please read all the warning labels.
- The motor, coolant radiator and some other components can reach high temperatures while driving. Read and follow the warning labels on the components.

 **WARNING**

- Do not remove or disassemble any high-voltage parts, otherwise serious or even life-threatening injuries may be caused.
- In case of collision, wading and other situations that may cause damage to the high-pressure system, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to avoid the risk of electric shock.
- Do not continue to use the vehicle to avoid the risk of electric shock if the vehicle gives a warning of electric leakage or a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider has diagnosed that the vehicle has electric leakage.
- Do not touch parts with high voltage, so as to avoid electric shock caused by improper operation which causes serious or even life-threatening injuries.
- The vehicle is powered by a gasoline engine and an electric motor, you may hear engine sounds coming from the engine compartment.
- When the vehicle powers up or down, the sound of the high voltage component (the sound of contactor

engagement or disengagement) may be heard under the auxiliary dashboard, which is not a fault.

- If the "OK" indicator lights up, the vehicle can be driven, even if the gasoline engine has not been started (driven by the motor only).
- Be sure to press the "P" button when parking. When "P" or "N" gear is engaged and the State of Charge (SOC) is lower than a certain level, the engine may start to charge the high-voltage battery. If the hand-held shift lever is placed in Neutral, Reverse or Drive for too long, it will falsely report that the gear is stuck. Therefore, after the gear is engaged, be sure to release the shift lever. When leaving the vehicle, press the "P" button, take away the key and lock all doors.
- If the low-voltage battery fails and is completely exhausted, even the 12V external power supply cannot be used for jump starts, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

 **WARNING**

- Be sure to turn off the powertrain when leaving the vehicle.
- Be sure to press the "P" button when leaving the vehicle, because when the OK indicator lights up but the engine stops, the vehicle can move slowly in idle (because the motor drives it).
- When the "OK" indicator is on, if you shift the gear selector to Reverse or Drive without pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle may move slowly. Please pay attention.
- It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider in the following conditions:

- Vehicle repair or maintenance is required.
- If the vehicle cannot be repaired due to accident or other reasons.
- The vehicle is being handled because of the use of a sealed hybrid low-voltage battery.

**! WARNING**

- In the event of an accident, perform the following operations to reduce the risk of high-voltage electric leakage.
  - Move the vehicle to a safe place.
  - Depress the brake pedal, press the "P" button, and check that the gear is successfully switched and EPB is engaged.
  - Stop the dual-mode system.
- If the vehicle is severely damaged, there may be a risk of electric shock. To avoid electric shock, do not touch any high-voltage components (such as battery assembly) or cables (in orange) connecting components. If there are uninsulated wires inside or outside the vehicle, do not touch them to avoid electric shock.
- If the liquid leaks into some parts of the vehicle, do not touch the liquid, because it may be the electrolyte of the low-voltage battery. If the fluid contacts the skin or eyes, flush with plenty of water (preferably boric acid solution) and seek medical attention to avoid severe injury.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use a electric fire extinguisher to extinguish the fire. Using only a small amount of water can be dangerous, so use plenty of water

**! WARNING**

- (such as a fire hydrant) or wait for the fire brigade.
- If the vehicle needs to be towed, please select the four-wheel off-ground towing. If the wheels touch the ground during towing, the motor may continue to generate electricity, resulting in electric leakage.

## Anti-theft Alarm System

### Anti-theft Alarm System

#### Arming the system

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. All occupants get off the vehicle.
3. Lock all doors and the anti-theft alarm system will arm automatically after eight seconds.

#### Triggering the alarm

- The system, when armed, will raise an alarm with flashing turn signals in any of the following situations:
  - Any door, trunk, or hood is opened without using the keyless access function of the smart key.
  - Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.

#### Disarming the system

- Anti-theft alarm can be stopped by:
  - Unlocking the door or trunk with a valid smart key/phone app.
  - Using the microswitch to unlock the door by carrying a valid smart key.


- Opening the trunk remotely with a valid smart key/phone app.
- Use a valid phone NFC to unlock the vehicle.
- Starting the vehicle remotely with a valid smart key.
- Pressing the "START/STOP" button inside the vehicle while carrying a valid smart key.
- Turning on the A/C system with a valid phone App.

### **WARNING**

- Do not modify the anti-theft alarm system by means of alteration or addition, otherwise the system may fail.

## Data Collection and Processing

### Data Collection and Processing

- This section provides you with some important information on how personal data is collected and processed when you use a DENZA vehicle.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, please refer to the current version of the privacy policy for the vehicle available in the infotainment system (infotainment touchscreen →  → **System** → **General** → **Legal Information** → **Privacy Statement**).
- This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR) system. EDR mainly records data in the

event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:

- Vehicle velocity
- Tire pressure condition
- Adaptive cruise control (ACC) system status
- Whether the seat belt is fastened
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
- The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyze the accident.
- The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. DENZA discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, they can read the data of SRS control unit to clarify the accident).

### Vehicle Data Processing

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.

- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

### **In-vehicle data**

#### Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (concerning speed, battery level, and the braking system) or environment data (including distance sensors and temperature) are collected and processed.
- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by DENZA authorized dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to DENZA engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

### **Remote-services-related data**

#### Remote monitoring services

- The vehicle has remote monitoring services. These include remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and

safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).

- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to DENZA data center in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

### **Other**

#### Infotainment system

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the infotainment system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for use in the navigation system, or data for use in online services.
- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- DENZA has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

#### Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's infotainment system.
- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played

through the infotainment system or transmitted to it.

- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.
- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

#### Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or DENZA services through the vehicle's infotainment system network devices.
- DENZA is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

#### Camera image recording/surrounding area monitoring

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- The reason for this is that some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed which is done by cameras that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings such as obstacles.
- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further analytics required to operate the systems.
- Some images are just processed on a volatile basis (RAM), others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.



- The vehicle may be equipped with an outward-facing camera (OFC) that can be used to take footage of the surrounding.
- You are responsible to check the laws of your residence before turning on OFC.
- For more camera details, see section "Around View Monitor" in this manual.

#### Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, that is, when you are purchasing a second-hand vehicle or receiving a vehicle transferred from a third party for permanent use, it must be noted that any personalization/user settings made via the infotainment system (including the address list and the navigation system) can be accessed by the new owner.



#### REMINDER

- When the vehicle is being scrapped or transferred, reset the vehicle system to factory settings to protect your personal privacy.
- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the DENZA data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap  to turn Wi-Fi off.
  - This can also be done by tapping  → **System** → **Link** → **WLAN**.

#### Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities

- BYD will not disclose your personal data to third parties unless this

is legally permissible or you have consented to it.

- However, subject to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorized to read out data from vehicles (for example, data can be read from the airbag control unit to clarify an accident).
- If required by law, BYD may also be obliged to disclose data upon request to governmental authorities in your country, such as in the investigation of a criminal offence.

### Your Data Protection Rights

- DENZA has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
  - Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).
- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.

- For more information on data processing, data protection, and any rights you may have, please visit the latest version of the Privacy Policy available at the infotainment system.

## Sentry Mode

### Sentry Mode

Sentry Mode is a parking security assistance feature. When activated, it monitors the vehicle's surroundings and records video of potential risk events, storing them on the vehicle's memory card. The system triggers recording if someone approaches specific areas around the vehicle or if the vehicle experiences impacts, bumps, or other abnormal vibrations. You can view or delete these videos through the Sentry Mode app on the vehicle's infotainment touchscreen. If you have the BYD App installed, you can also activate Sentry Mode remotely via your phone and receive related notifications.

#### Activating Sentry Mode

- You can enable Sentry Mode either via the infotainment touchscreen or remotely through the BYD App.
  - Infotainment touchscreen activation: On the infotainment touchscreen, you can turn on the function by tapping the Sentry Mode app, swiping down the shortcut menu and selecting **Scenario Mode** → **Sentry Mode**, or using voice commands to open the Sentry Mode screen. Once enabled, it will automatically activate when the vehicle is powered off and locked.
  - Remote activation: You can activate Sentry Mode remotely via the BYD App. On the Vehicle page of the app,

tap the Sentry Mode icon to enter the interface and select to activate it.

### Activation requirements

- Sentry Mode will only operate if all the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle is powered off and locked.
  - A valid memory card with sufficient available storage is installed.
  - The vehicle battery is above the minimum reserve level set in **Sentry Mode** → **Settings** → **Reserve Battery**.
- If any of these conditions are not met, Sentry Mode will not function.
- After first activation, you can configure the Sentry Mode schedule under **Sentry Mode** → **Settings** → **Activation Cycle**.

### Video recording details

- While active, Sentry Mode continuously monitors the vehicle's surroundings and records video. If a potential or actual threat is detected, the system will display a warning on the infotainment touchscreen, send a notification to the phone, and store the event video on the vehicle's memory card.
- Recorded events are categorized by risk level:
  - Low-risk events (orange label): captured from front, rear, left, and right cameras when the vehicle detects a pedestrian approaching within a certain distance.
  - High-risk events (red label): captured from front, rear, left, and right cameras when the vehicle detects impacts, collisions, or abnormal vibrations.

### Settings

- In the Sentry Mode settings, the following options can be configured:
  - Reserve battery: Sentry Mode automatically stops when the battery reaches the specified reserve level.
  - Activation cycle:
    - Always on: Sentry Mode activates automatically each time the vehicle is powered off and locked.
    - Single activation: Sentry Mode activates only for the current power-off and lock cycle.
  - Restore default settings: Selecting this option will prompt a confirmation dialog. Once confirmed, all Sentry Mode settings will return to factory defaults.

### WARNING

- The vehicle owner should evaluate whether Sentry Mode is appropriate based on parking location and environment. It must not be used in areas with national security, military, or political sensitivity (such as military zones, national defense industry sites, or government offices at county level or above). Using Sentry Mode in such areas is at the owner's personal risk.
- To protect the legal rights of yourself and others, do not share or distribute Sentry Mode recordings to third parties. Owners must not use recordings to infringe on the rights of third parties, including personal data of individuals outside the vehicle or information regarding other vehicles and facilities such as license plates. Recordings must not be stored, transmitted,

**WARNING**

published, or shared in violation of national laws, or used for illegal gain. Any legal liability arising from misuse is the owner's responsibility.

**CAUTION**

- Once Sentry Mode is active, the vehicle's panoramic cameras monitor the surroundings, and event videos are stored only on the vehicle's memory card. Always keep these videos secure.
- For optimal recording, the vehicle's side mirrors will extend. Be mindful of the space around the vehicle to avoid damage. If the vehicle does not have power-folding mirrors, manually extend the mirrors to ensure full coverage.



# 02

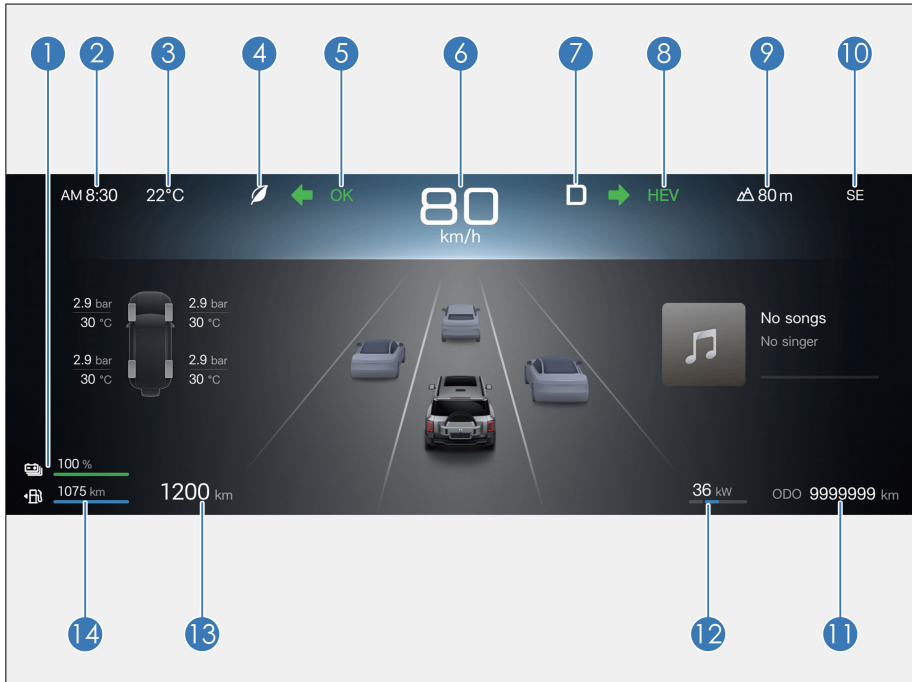
## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster.....42

# Instrument Cluster

## Instrument Cluster View

### LCD Instrument Cluster



- |   |                                 |    |                               |
|---|---------------------------------|----|-------------------------------|
| 1 | Remaining battery driving range | 8  | Dynamic mode                  |
| 2 | Time                            | 9  | Elevation                     |
| 3 | Outside temperature             | 10 | Direction                     |
| 4 | Driving Mode                    | 11 | Total mileage                 |
| 5 | OK indicator                    | 12 | Power meter                   |
| 6 | Speed                           | 13 | Total Remaining driving range |
| 7 | Gear status                     | 14 | Remaining oil driving range   |

**! REMINDER**















- For safe driving, the instrument cluster may switch to simple mode during occasional communication delays in the instrument cluster system. In this mode, the instrument cluster continues to display driving related information normally without affecting normal vehicle travel. After the system becomes normal, the instrument cluster may automatically exit the simple mode. If it does not, try the following actions to switch back to normal mode:
  - Press and hold the scroll button on auxiliary dashboard for three seconds to restart the instrument cluster information display system.
  - While vehicle safety is ensured, operate the vehicle power





























**! REMINDER**

- switch to turn off the vehicle and then turn the ignition on.
- If the instrument cluster remains in simple mode after those actions have been taken, promptly contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.
- The image of the instrument cluster view is for reference only and is subject to actual factory configuration.
























## Instrument Cluster Indicators

### Indicators/Warning Lights

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	Turn signal indicator		Position light indicator
	Discharge indicator		All-weather indicator
	U-turn active indicator		Low beam indicator
	AVH working indicator		HDC indicator
	Snow chain function indicator		Creep mode indicator
	Light switch indicator		GPF regeneration indicator light
	Regular cruise control main indicator		EV Indicator

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	Differential lock status indicator	HEV	HEV Indicator
SET	Regular cruise control indicator		AMAP active indicator
	Front fog light indicator		Quick charging indicator
	Get-out-of-trouble indicator light		Adaptive turn indicator
	Compass U-turn indicator		Crab indicator
	Night vision on indicator		Quick charging indicator
	BSD active indicator		AFL indicator
	Game mode		ELKA urgent avoidance active indicator
	High beam indicator		Towing mode indicator
	Comfort mode indicator		Intelligent mode indicator
	Driving power limit warning light		Traverse indicator
	Suspension lowering indicator		Suspension off indicator
	Suspension rising indicator		Suspension height indicator
	Wade mode indicator		Sport mode indicator
	Economy mode indicator		Snow mode indicator

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	Mud mode indicator		Mountain mode indicator
	Sand mode Indicator		Rock mode indicator
	Battery temperature control indicator		LDW fault indicator
	Brake pad wear indicator		Overspeed warning indicator
	P gear lock fault indicator		AEB off indicator
	AEB fault indicator		GPF regeneration indicator light
	Driving power limit warning light		LDW off indicator
	Function safety failure indicator		Suspension service indicator
	Suspension fault indicator		Fill function indicator
	Tire pressure fault warning light		Oil life monitoring indicator
	Smart key warning light		Main alarm indicator
	Electronic stability control off warning light		ESC system fault warning light
	Rear fog light indicator		Emission fault indicator
	ABS fault warning light		Wading mode fault indicator
	AVAS OFF indicator		BSD fault indicator

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	High-voltage battery low SOC warning light		Low fuel level indicator
	AVAS fault indicator		ELKA urgent avoidance fault indicator
	ELKA urgent avoidance off indicator		IHBC fault indicator
<b>AFS OFF</b>	AFS fault indicator		High-voltage battery fault warning light
	Child restraint fault indicator		Towing mode fault indicator
	EPB indicator		Parking system fault warning light
	Sport+ mode indicator		Seat belt indicator
	Airbag fault warning light		Steering system fault warning light
	Coolant overheating warning light		Low oil pressure warning light
	High-voltage battery charging connection indicator		Low-voltage power system warning light
	High-voltage battery overheating warning light		Headlight fault warning light
	Powertrain fault warning light		Motor overheating warning light

### Warning Lights/Indicators Description



Emission fault indicator

- With the vehicle powered ON, this fault indicator is on for self-check. If on at any other time, it indicates that a

certain control system of the vehicle may be faulty. Continuous operation in this state may cause serious damage to the vehicle.

- If this warning light lights up when the vehicle is not in self-check, drive the vehicle to the roadside safely, power

the vehicle off, and power it on again. Start the engine and look for this warning light. If the warning light is still on, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Before the DENZA authorized dealer or service provider finds out the fault, be careful to drive the vehicle and avoid driving at a high speed or fully pressing the accelerator pedal.

- If the fault warning light lights up frequently, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection, even if it goes out after the above steps are followed.



### CAUTION

- Continuous driving after the emission fault warning light turns on may damage the emission control system and the engine.



### Low fuel warning light

- If on, it indicates little fuel in the fuel tank and reminds the driver to refuel the vehicle as soon as possible.
- When the fuel tank shakes on a slope or curve, the low fuel warning light may be on earlier than usual.



### Smart key warning light

- If the key is not in the vehicle when you press the START/STOP button, this warning light comes on for a few seconds, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected, please confirm if the key is in the vehicle" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- If you press the START/STOP button while an electronic smart key matching the model is in the vehicle, this

warning light does not light up. The vehicle can now be powered on.

- This warning light will disappear if the key is taken into the vehicle within a few seconds after the light turns on.
- If the warning light flashes after you press the START/STOP button, it indicates low battery of the key.



### ABS fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this warning light is on for self-check. If the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is working properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, the light lights up again until the fault is cleared.
- When the ABS fault warning light turns on (with the parking system fault warning light off), the ABS system fails, but the braking system continues to operate normally.
- When the ABS fault warning light turns on (with the parking system fault warning light off), since the ABS system does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light does not come on or is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

## REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the parking system fault warning light and ABS fault warning light go on at the same time, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.
- The ABS has a self-check function. If any malfunction occurs, the ABS fault warning light turns on. This means the ABS fails. At this time, the brake still provides normal braking force like a conventional vehicle without anti-lock braking function, and the front or rear axle may lock up under large braking force, which will easily lead to steering failure or tail flick. Especially when this fault occurs in rainy and snowy weather, do not depress the brake pedal deeply to avoid losing control of the vehicle. At the same time, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to check the vehicle as soon as possible.
- If both the ABS and parking system warning lights go on after the electronic parking brake is fully released, it indicates that the braking force distribution system of the front and rear tires has also failed.
- If the brake pedal feels abnormal, take measures immediately. The braking system is dual-circuited, so partial failure cannot prevent the other two wheels from braking. In such a situation, you need to press the brake pedal further to slow the vehicle, and

braking distance is longer. Decelerate the vehicle and safely move it to the roadside. A longer braking distance can present serious driving hazards, so the vehicle must be towed away for immediate repair.

- If you have to drive a short distance under such conditions, proceed at low speed with extreme caution.



### Tire pressure fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tire pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light comes on or flashes, the message "Please check the TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster, and the tire pressure is displayed as "---", it indicates that the tire pressure system is faulty.
- When the tire pressure value displays "No Signal", it indicates that the tire pressure signal at the location of the vehicle may be disturbed or the tire pressure monitoring module is damaged.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on and one or more values turn yellow on the tire pressure screen on the instrument cluster, the corresponding tire is in under-pressure condition. When the temperature value of one or more tires turns yellow, it indicates that the tire temperature is too high.

In any of the above cases, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.



### ACC fault indicator

- When the light is steady on, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider in time.



### ESC warning light

- This warning light turns on after the vehicle is started. If electronic stability control (ESC) functions properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is cleared.
- If the ESC warning light flashes temporarily while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates the ESC system is working.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC fails, but the ABS and the braking system continue to operate normally.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC system does not work. This means the vehicle is extremely unstable at sharp turns or when the driver steers away from obstacles ahead.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light remains off (self-check not performed) after the vehicle is started and powered on.
  - This warning light is steady on while driving.



### REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ESC fault warning light remains on while the fault warning lights for the ABS and the parking system are on, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider. This is because braking at this time can render the vehicle extremely unstable, and the anti-lock braking system does not work at all.



### ESC OFF warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on for a few seconds and then disappears.
- When the "ESC OFF" switch is turned on, the light should remain steady on and the ESC system will not operate. When the "ESC OFF" switch is pressed again, this warning light should turn off and the ESC system resumes its normal operation.



### REMINDER

- Once the ESC OFF warning light is on, the driver must stay alert and drive at a low speed when making a sharp turn or avoiding obstacles which appear suddenly, because ESC system is turned off at this time and braking will cause instability.



light

### Driving power limit warning

- When the power of the vehicle is limited, this warning light will light up, and it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider in time.



#### Seat belt reminder indicator

- This warning light reminds the driver and the passenger to fasten their seat belts. With the ignition on, if anyone of the driver, the front passenger or the second-row passenger doesn't fasten a seat belt, the corresponding seat belt indicator will light up. It remains on until the seat belt is fastened.



#### Airbag fault warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on and then off after a few seconds if the airbag system is working properly. This warning light is used to monitor the airbag ECU, collision sensors, inflation device, warning lights, connections, and power supply.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on or flashes during driving.



#### Parking system fault warning

light

In any of the following cases, please park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

This warning light lights up in the following conditions:

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on and the brake fluid level is low.



#### REMINDER


- When the brake fluid level is low, park the vehicle because it is dangerous to continue driving.
- When the engine is running, this indicator is solid on if the brake fluid level and EPB system operation are normal (the EPB is engaged and released normally, and the message "Please check the EPB" is not displayed).
- The parking system fault warning light stays on with the ABS fault warning light. In this case, the braking system or the EPB may not work normally, lengthening the braking distance. Therefore, the ABS does not function during braking, and the vehicle is unstable. Please drive with caution.
- Momentary illumination of this warning light during operation does not indicate a problem.



#### CAUTION

In any of the following cases, please park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

- When the engine is running and the light is still on, the brake may malfunction, resulting in extended stopping distances. Firmly depress the brake pedal to initiate an emergency stop.
- The brake system fault warning light stays on with the ABS fault

 **CAUTION**

warning light. In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.



Steering system fault warning light

- When the steering system is faulty, this warning light is steady on. It is recommended to bring the vehicle to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.
- The steering system features an electric motor to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- When turning the steering wheel, a hum may be heard from the running motor. This does not indicate that the motor is faulty.
- Do not turn the steering wheel to its limit position for more than five seconds, otherwise the temperature protection will be activated and the steering system will be damaged or steering will become heavy.
- If you have turned the steering wheel frequently with the vehicle staying put for a long time, the steering wheel may become difficult to turn even if the warning light does not turn on. This is not a fault.
  - To prevent steering system overheating, the power assist effect will be reduced if the steering wheel has been frequently turned with the vehicle staying put for a long time. As a result, the steering wheel become difficult to turn. In this case, reduce steering frequency, or power off the vehicle and turn off the engine. The system will recover within 10 minutes.

 **WARNING**

- If the steering system fault warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.




Coolant overheating warning light

- When the power gear is "ON", this light is on, indicating that the coolant temperature is high. It is recommended to stop the vehicle for cooling. In harsh conditions, like hot season and long periods of hill climbing and high speed driving, the engine may overheat.



Low oil pressure warning light

- This light is about warning of low oil pressure. If this warning light flashes or remains on during driving, drive off the road, park the vehicle in a safe place, and shut down the engine immediately. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for help.
- When the engine is idling, this warning light may flash occasionally, or go on momentarily after emergency braking. When the engine is accelerating gradually, if this indicator goes out, the oil pressure is normal.
- This warning light goes on in case of very low oil level.

 **CAUTION**

- Do not drive the vehicle when the warning light is on, even for



### CAUTION

a short distance. Otherwise, the engine is damaged.



### Low-voltage power system fault

warning light

- If this warning light turns on while driving, it indicates that there is a problem with the charging system, DC system, or low-voltage power supply system. The engine can continue igniting until the battery runs out. Air conditioning, fans, multimedia, etc. Should be turned off, and it is recommended that the car be driven to the nearest DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.



### Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain fails, this warning light lights up.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.



### CAUTION

- Try not to drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. It is recommended to drive to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to check the problem as soon as possible.



### High-voltage battery

overheating warning light

- If this warning light is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery temperature is too high and the vehicle must be stopped to cool down. When the warning light flashes, it is recommended to immediately stop the vehicle safely and leave the vehicle as soon as possible.
- The high-voltage battery may overheat under the following operating conditions:
  - Driving up a slope for a long time in hot weather
  - Long period of stop-and-go traffic condition, frequent rapid acceleration, frequent hard braking, or vehicle running for a long time without pause.



### High-voltage battery fault


warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on. If the high-voltage battery system is working properly, this warning light will turn off in a few seconds. If this light lights up again thereafter, it indicates a system failure. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is on.

- This warning light is steady on or occasionally turns on while driving.


**120** TSR indicator

- When this indicator lights up, it means that the vehicle system has recognized the speed limit value on current road section.

 Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) regeneration indicator

- When the GPF carbon load (particulate matter emission) reaches a certain amount, the GPF will actively regenerate and the GPF indicator is solid green. At this time, try to drive on the highway as much as road conditions allow, and when the particulate matter



is cleared, the GPF indicator turns off automatically.






 GPF regeneration fault indicator

- When the GPF carbon load (particulate matter emission) reaches its maximum, fuel consumption increases, power performance decreases, and the GPF indicator is solid yellow. At this time, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

**Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts**

The instrument cluster may display the following fault prompts. Handle them as recommended:

Symbol	Fault Prompt	Response
	Please check the OBC system	The on-board charging system is faulty. In this case, check the charging connection, and reconnect the charging equipment. If it can not be solved, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Stop using remote driving for your safety.	Stop using remote driving when it is abnormal.
	Please check the data network of the vehicle.	The vehicle may be disconnected from the data network. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Engine attachment limited	The engine system is faulty. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the headlight.	The headlight is faulty. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

	Please check the PCW system*.	The PCW system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	The AEB function is limited*	The AEB system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the BSD system*	The blind spot detection system for lane change is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	The BSD function is limited*	The BSD function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the gear	The shifter controller is faulty. Park the vehicle immediately, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Solenoid valve is cleaning. Please wait for a moment.	The solenoid valve is cleaning, please park and wait. If the malfunction exists for a long time, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the hill descent control (HDC) system	The HDC system is faulty. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

# 03

## CONTROLLER OPERATION

Doors and Keys.....	56
Seats.....	71
Steering Wheel.....	82
Wipers.....	85
Mirrors.....	88
Switches.....	90

# Doors and Keys

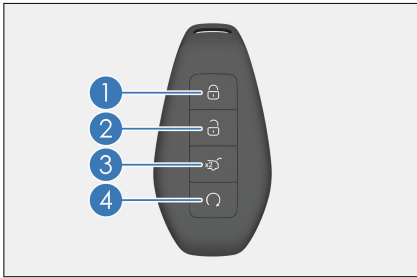
## Keys

The vehicle is equipped with electronic smart key, mechanical key, Bluetooth key, NFC key card, NFC digital key and UWB digital key.

### Smart Key

Press the left or right front door microswitch, while carrying the smart key, to unlock or lock all doors, or press smart key buttons to lock/unlock doors, open the trunk, or start the vehicle remotely.

- ① Lock button
- ② Unlock button
- ③ Trunk release button
- ④ Start/Stop button



### WARNING

- The button (coin) battery in the smart key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kept away from children at all times.
- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less.

### WARNING

- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

### CAUTION

- The smart key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions to prevent damage to the key:
  - Do not expose the smart key to high temperatures, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not disassemble the smart key.
  - Do not let the smart key hit other objects or fall down.
  - Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
  - Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
  - Do not attach to the smart key any objects (such as a metal seal) capable of cutting off electromagnetic wave signals.
  - You can register a spare key for the same vehicle. For details, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:
  - Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal

**CAUTION**

- operation of electronic smart keys.
- The smart key battery may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for battery change.
  - If you lose your smart key, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to reduce the risk of vehicle theft or accidents.
  - Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), or arbitrarily connect the external detection antenna or switch other transmitting detection antennas.
  - The use of the smart key must not cause harmful interference to legal radio communication services. Once interference is found, stop using the key immediately and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use.
  - The use of micropower radio equipment must endure the interference of various radio services or the radiation interference of industrial, scientific, and medical equipment.
  - Do not use it near airplanes or airports.
  - People implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators should stay away from the

**CAUTION**

- detection antennas of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices.
- In addition to people implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.
  - When leaving the vehicle, always carry your key and lock the vehicle. Never leave anyone (especially children) alone in the vehicle.

**Mechanical Key**

The mechanical key is separately placed in the handover gift box. Please keep it properly for use.

**Bluetooth Digital Key****Bluetooth digital key instructions**

- Use the DENZA Bluetooth digital key to control the vehicle through a close-range mobile phone Bluetooth connection, including locking or unlocking the doors.
- Download and install the latest BYD App version in the application market, and integrate DENZA bluetooth key function internally.
- The Bluetooth digital keys of supporting vehicles are automatically activated after the remote services are enabled.

- Turning on Bluetooth on the phone and approaching the vehicle to connect Bluetooth automatically. You can also connect the Bluetooth manually. After connection, the Bluetooth key can be used.
- Select the desired operation item, and then send instructions for control.
- The vehicle unlocked by Bluetooth key will authorize a keyless start permission within a period of time, which allows the user to start and drive the vehicle by directly pressing the START button. The permission becomes invalid after the time limit expires or other operations are performed, and can be reactivated through a Bluetooth unlock.

#### CAUTION

- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration.
- Before activating the Bluetooth key, ensure that the vehicle network signal is good. If the activation fails, try to move the vehicle to a place with good network and activate the key again in the application.
- When using the Bluetooth digital key for the first time, you need to set or verify the login password.
- After the vehicle is unlocked with a Bluetooth digital key, the doors will lock automatically if there is no operation in a short time.
- When the Bluetooth connection or operation fails for many times, you can turn the Bluetooth off and then on, or restart the application. Limited by the vehicle environment, the effective distance of the Bluetooth digital

#### CAUTION

key will be reduced in case of dense vehicles.

- There are a few mobile phones that are not compatible with Bluetooth digital keys.

#### NFC Key Card

- The NFC key card, based on the near field communication method, can be used to unlock/lock the vehicle and authorize vehicle start.
- Tap the NFC card against the NFC mark on the driver or passenger side mirror to lock/unlock the vehicle and obtain four minutes of start authorization.
- After entering the vehicle, if the start authorization has expired, place the NFC key on the side mirror NFC mark to regain authorization.

#### CAUTION

- NFC key card is an electronic product. The following instructions must be observed to prevent function failure or damage to the card:
  - Do not place the NFC card in the wireless phone charging area in the vehicle (see **P254**).
  - Do not attach any object (such as a metal seal or metal phone case) that may cut off electromagnetic waves.
  - Do not place the NFC card in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not bend the card with force.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Do not place the card with other hard objects.
- In order to ensure vehicle safety, handle the NFC key card with care. If it is lost, immediately contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for blocking of the lost card and configuration of a new card.

**NFC Digital Key****Introduction to NFC Key**

- NFC digital keys include digital key in the smartphone and digital key in wearable devices. You can easily and safely unlock, lock and start your BYD vehicle by adding a digital car key to your smartphone or Apple Watch when the necessary conditions are met. It can even be used when your smartphone or Apple Watch is not connected to the Internet or is automatically turned off by weak electricity for a period of time (subject to the actual situation of the supported model).

**Activating the NFC digital key on smartphones (IOS)****• Necessary conditions**

To use the NFC digital key, the following conditions must be met. Please ensure that all conditions are met before opening the key:

- ① The vehicle has been added into the BYD App.
- ② Your vehicle is equipped with a digital key and the configuration supports this function.
- ③ Your device is an iPhone XR and later model with the latest version of iOS, or an Apple Watch Series 5 and

later model with the latest version of watchOS.

**! REMINDER**

- The NFC digital key actually supports the equipment type and the latest vehicle model, subject to the locally listed vehicle model and its latest configuration information. (Please consult the dealer for specific support and final vehicle configuration)

**• How to open**

When you meet the necessary conditions for using the NFC digital key, you can open it through the BYD application:

Open and log in the BYD App application (BYD App V2.7.0 and above is required), select the digital key, keep the vehicle in P gear, and open it according to the content prompted on the mobile App.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- When the page jumps to the wallet page, please click the "Start" button, and then follow the instructions on the wallet page to put the middle or lower part of the back of the phone close to the NFC induction area (within 2 cm) of the outside rearview mirror of the driver's seat. Please do not move the phone before opening.

**Activating the NFC digital key on watch**

- There are two ways to launch Apple watch: Bind iPhone synchronous opening and Watch App application opening.
  - Bind iPhone synchronous opening.

After activation of NFC digital key, iPhone synchronously prompts to add a digital key on the nearby bound Apple Watch. Hold the Watch near the iPhone and activate it according to the instructions.

- **Activating Watch App**

① It is applicable to the case of binding Apple Watch after successfully opening the iPhone digital key. Open the Watch App, select the "Wallet" icon, select the NFC digital key corresponding to "Add", and complete the opening according to the prompt content.

② Once enabled, the NFC digital key will appear in the Apple Wallet app. You can view and manage your NFC digital keys in BYD App, Apple Wallet App and car settings at the same time.

## **How to use and manage NFC digital key**

- **Unlocking/Locking Doors:**

You only need to put the back of the smartphone close to the NFC sensing area (within 4 cm) on the outside rearview mirror on the driver's side until "√" is displayed on the phone.

- **Starting the vehicle:**

Simply place the back of your smartphone close to/in the NFC sensing area of the outside rearview mirror on the driver's side of the vehicle, and you can start the vehicle without any further action within 4 minutes of first unlocking.

- **Share**

You can share the NFC digital key with up to 7 friends and relatives by sending an invitation in your wallet (for Apple users, you can send an invitation through iMessage, Airdrop, Mail, etc. For Android users, you can only send an invitation through Mail, and the

recipient needs to use a compatible mobile phone). Only the owner's NFC digital key has the right to share. You can also delete the share at any time through BYD App, Wallet or in the "Vehicle Settings/Doors, Windows and Locks/Digital Keys" menu.

## **Activating the NFC digital key on smartphones (Android)**

- **Necessary conditions**

To use the NFC digital key, the following conditions must be met. Please ensure that all conditions are met before opening the key:

① The vehicle has been added into the BYD App.

② Your vehicle is equipped with a digital key and the configuration supports this function.

③ Your device model is in the list of supported models, and the Android version and wallet app are up to date. For Samsung phones, the digital key will be added to Samsung Wallet.

### **REMINDER**

- The NFC digital key actually supports the equipment type and the latest vehicle model, subject to the locally listed vehicle model and its latest configuration information. (Please consult the dealer for specific support and final vehicle configuration)

- **How to open**

When you meet the necessary conditions for using the NFC digital key, you can open it through the BYD application:

Open and log in the BYD App application (BYD App V2.7.0 and above is required), select the digital key, keep the vehicle in P gear, and open it

according to the content prompted on the mobile App.

### CAUTION

- When the page jumps to the wallet page, please click the "Start" button, and then follow the instructions on the wallet page to put the middle or lower part of the back of the phone close to the NFC induction area (within 2 cm) of the outside rearview mirror of the driver's seat. Please do not move the phone before opening.

### How to use and manage NFC digital key

#### • **Unlocking/Locking Doors:**

You can unlock or lock the vehicle by simply holding the back of the smartphone close to the NFC sensing area (within 4 cm) on the outside mirror on the driver's side.

#### • **Starting the vehicle:**

Simply place the back of your smartphone close to/in the NFC sensing area of the outside rearview mirror on the driver's side of the vehicle, and you can start the vehicle without any further action within 4 minutes of first unlocking.

#### • **Share**

You can share the NFC digital key with up to 7 friends and relatives by sending an invitation in your wallet (for Apple users, you can send an invitation through iMessage, Airdrop, Mail, etc. For Android users, you can only send an invitation through Mail, and the recipient needs to use a compatible mobile phone). Only the owner's NFC digital key has the right to share. You can also delete the share at any time through BYD App, Wallet or in the

"Vehicle Settings/Doors, Windows and Locks/Digital Keys" menu.

### REMINDER

- Before subscribing to and using the NFC digital key service, please carefully read and ensure that you have fully understood and understood the contents of the NFC digital key user agreement and instructions.
- This digital key service is for personal use only. Please ensure that you use the NFC digital key service to the extent permitted by applicable laws and regulations.
- After successful activation, please follow the instructions for use. In case of any software or hardware failure, please contact the local dealer or customer service.
- Your digital key service lasts for the duration of your vehicle's use. However, it is possible that your smartphone is not compatible with your version of the BYD digital key system, or that the smartphone manufacturer has turned off services for digital keys in the operating system. The operating system of smartphones and other factors are not affected by BYD.
- BYD reserves the right to provide a paid software upgrade if a software update for your vehicle is required in the future to update the smartphone model.

### UWB digital key

UWB digital key is an upgraded version of BYD digital key. You can add the UWB digital key Plus to your phone or wearable device and safely and easily unlock, lock, and enter driving mode by bringing the

device close to, away from, or into the vehicle. The UWB digital key requires the mobile phone or wearable device to support the ultra-wide band function and adapt to the BYD vehicle.

### **Activate UWB digital key**

- Download BYD APP in mobile APP store, and complete registration and login. Tap **Digital Key** to enable the function according to the instructions. Before activating the UWB digital key, observe the following conditions:
  - The vehicle supports UWB digital key;
  - BYD App has been registered and opened;
  - The phone supports BYD UWB digital key (for specific supported models, consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider).
  - The network of the mobile phone and the vehicle is in good condition.

### **How to Use UWB Digital Keys**

- Get close to unlock:
  - The vehicle can be unlocked by taking the device with the added UWB digital key Plus near the vehicle. This function can be turned on and off in the BYD App and in the digital key settings of the vehicle multimedia.
- Starting the vehicle:
  - Carry the device with UWB digital key into the vehicle, step on the brake and press the start button at the same time, and then start the vehicle safely.

### **Share UWB digital key**

- Through the mobile wallet application, the UWB digital key can be shared to other supported devices, and the shared devices can not be shared again.

### **Remove UWB digital key**

- The UWB digital key can be selected and removed in the BYD App digital key menu. To remove the key, you need to enter a 6-digit operation password.

### **Transfer UWB digital key to a new device**

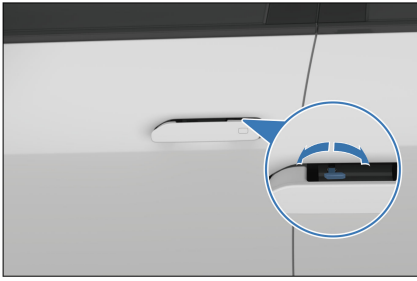
- When you log in to a BYD account on a new phone, UWB digital key is not automatically bound to the new device. You can enter the digital key menu, select the corresponding owner's key, click the "key transfer" button to remove the key on the original device and re-open it on the new device. The key transfer needs to enter a 6-digit operation password.

## **Locking/Unlocking Doors**

### **Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key**

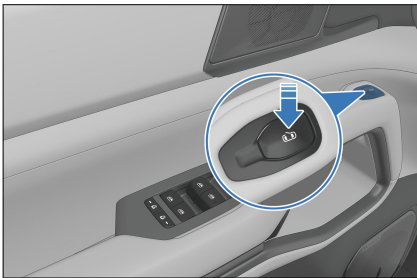
### **Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key**

- Press and hold the left side of the door handle. At this time, the right side will protrude. You can put your finger into the gap of the door handle and pull out the handle to make the mechanical keyhole leak out.
- Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole of the door handle, turn and remove the key, and pull the door handle to open the door.
- Unlock the driver's door: Turn the key counterclockwise.
- Lock the driver's door: Turn the key clockwise.



### Opening with Door Control Button

- When the vehicle is unlocked, press the button to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked, press the button twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.



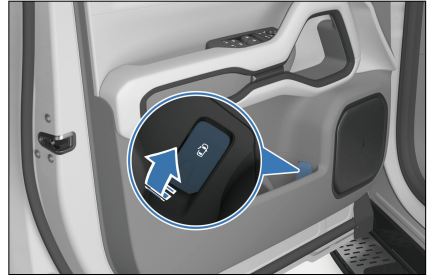
### REMINDER

- As this vehicle is equipped with electronic child protection locks, the rear doors can only be opened by pressing the interior door control buttons when the child protection locks are disabled.

### Opening with Interior Door Handle

- The door handles are located inside the door bins.
- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.

- When the vehicle is locked, pull the handle twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.



### WARNING

- Do not allow children to play with the door handle, so as to avoid the door opening while driving.
- If there are children in the vehicle, make sure to enable the child protection lock function.

### CAUTION

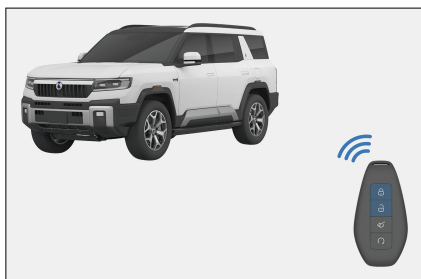
- Using mechanical connections, the interior door handles remain can open the doors even when the vehicle is powered off.
- Given the electronic child protection locks equipped, the rear doors can be opened with the interior handles only when the child protection locks are disabled.

### Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key

- The wireless remote control is used to unlock or lock all doors at a close distance, and complete additional functions.
- In the active area, press the associated button on the registered smart key to lock or unlock all doors.

## Locking:

- When all doors and hood are closed, press the lock button to lock all doors simultaneously. If the vehicle is shut down, the side mirrors fold in (when side mirror auto fold is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙️ → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**) with turn signals flashing once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once. Check whether all doors are securely locked.



- If a door, the hood or the trunk is not closed, the turn signals will not flash, and the horn will sound once.

## Unlocking:

- Press the unlock button to unlock all the doors at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.
- When you unlock all doors with the smart key, even if no door is opened, the interior lights (the DOOR function can be activated for the front interior lights) will stay on for 15 seconds and then go out.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open any door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the smart key. Otherwise, all the doors will lock automatically.
- If the key is in the vehicle when the doors are closed and locked, the

vehicle will unlock automatically and the turn signals will flash twice.

## Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key

- With the anti-theft alarm system armed, pressing the lock button sounds a beep and makes turn signals flash 15 times. Use this function to locate the vehicle when it cannot be found.
- When the vehicle is in vehicle search mode, press the lock button again. The vehicle enters another vehicle search mode.

## Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key

- When the ignition is switched off:
  - Press and hold the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.
  - Press and hold the unlock button on the smart key to lower the four windows.

### **WARNING**

- When using the remote control function to raise windows, pay attention to the safety of occupants in the vehicle, and use this function only after making sure the windows are clear from pinching anyone.

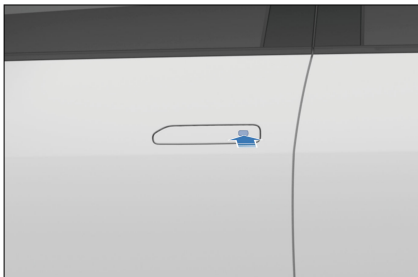
### **REMINDER**

- To enable or disable key unlock/lock/closing window functions, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙️ → Window and Locks → Windows. (Configurations of the actual vehicle prevail.)

## Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch

### Locking

- With the doors closed but not locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. All the doors are locked. If the vehicle is shut down, the side mirrors fold in (when side mirror auto fold is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙️ → Drive → Comfort driving) with turn signals flashing once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once.



- If a door, the hood or the trunk lid is not closed, pressing the microswitch will still lock the closed doors, but the horn will only sound once, and the turn signals will not flash.

### Unlocking

- When doors are locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. All doors unlock and turn signals flash twice.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking, or all doors will relock automatically.
- Pressing the microswitch does not work if:
  - This is performed while a door is being opened or closed.

- The key is in the vehicle.

### ! REMINDER

- If the smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

### Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch

- When the ignition is switched off, press and hold the front door microswitch while carrying the smart key to roll up or down all windows. (To enable or disable this function, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙️ → Locks → Windows.)

### Locking/Unlocking with NFC Key Card

#### Locking doors

With doors closed but unlocked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the left or right side mirror to lock all doors at the same time. If the vehicle is powered off, the side mirrors will fold in with turn signals flashing once.



#### Unlocking doors

When doors are locked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the side mirror. Then all doors are unlocked at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.

- Doors will not be locked/unlocked when the NFC keys are close to the designated area on the side mirror when:
- The NFC key is placed close to the designated area on the exterior rearview mirror while a door is being opened or closed.
- To use the NFC digital key, enable the NFC function of the phone and hold the top back part of the phone close to the designated area on the exterior rearview mirror.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- The NFC digital key may not work on some phones when they are turned off.
- Avoid using the NFC digital key of your phone for extended periods or frequently when it is out of battery or turned off.

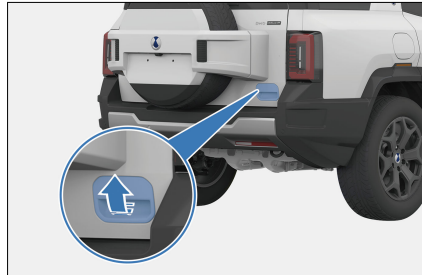
**! REMINDER**

- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking with the NFC key, or all doors will relock automatically.
- After unlocking by NFC key, the user can start the vehicle without the key in a stipulated period, while this will be disabled after legal locking.
- The keyless start permission lasts for up to 4 minutes.

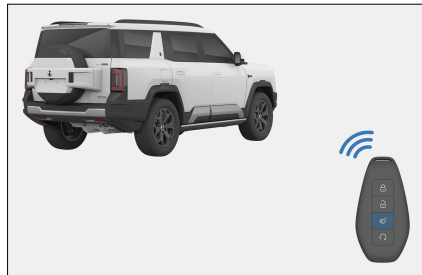
**Locking/Unlocking the Trunk**

- Opening the trunk with exterior handle
- With the vehicle unlocked, pull the back door outside handle and pull out the back door to open.

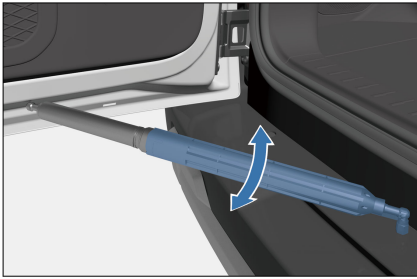
- With the vehicle locked, unlock the vehicle, pull the back door outside handle and pull out the back door to open.



- Unlocking the trunk with smart key
  - Press the "back door opening" button on the smart key for a short time, and press the button again within 1 second after releasing, the back door will be opened, and the turn signal lamp will flash twice.



- Keep the back door hover open
  - As shown in the figure, open the back door to the maximum angle, and then rotate the sheath counterclockwise to keep the back door hover open; rotate the sheath clockwise to release the flexible opening angle of the back door.



**! WARNING**

- It is prohibited to drive the vehicle with the back door open.

**! CAUTION**

- When opening the back door, do not use too much force, otherwise the back door will be easily damaged.
- After opening the back door, the light of the left rear lamp is dimmed by the spare tire, so it is recommended to use a triangular warning sign or other devices that meet the regulations to remind pedestrians and other vehicles.
- To close the back door, it is necessary to rotate the back door stopper sheath to the unlocking state.
- When closing the back door, make sure that your fingers or those of others are not caught.
- When the back door is frozen or covered by ice and snow under low temperature, please do not pull the back door by force. At this time, adjust the heating of the air conditioner, and try to open the back door after the temperature inside the vehicle rises. In case of emergency, try to open the back door after clearing the snow and

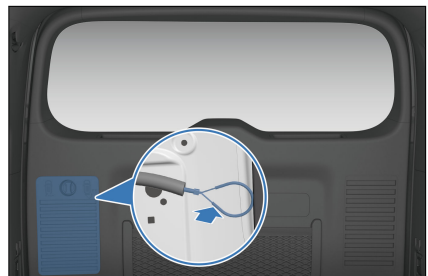
**! CAUTION**

using warm water to loosen and melt the ice.

- Do not install, hang or paste any ornaments, or step on or place heavy objects on the back door without a limit stop.
- It is not recommended to refit or install the back door, otherwise the reliability of the relevant parts of the back door may be reduced due to the increase of weight and other reasons, resulting in poor back door holding system, difficulty in opening the back door, abnormal driving noise, sheet metal cracking, deformation and other unpredictable problems.

**Emergency Trunk Releasing from the Inside**

- When the vehicle is powered off, the trunk lid can be unlocked from the inside in case of emergency.
- There is an emergency unlocking cover just on the right of the trunk lock. To open the trunk in an emergency, open the cover, and then pull the emergency unlocking rope and apply outward force to the trunk at the same time.



## **WARNING**

- In order to prevent serious injury and even death, make sure to observe the following precautions when operating the trunk:
  - Make sure to alert people nearby of the lid motion.
  - Make sure hands and fingers are clear from the lid area when it is closing.
  - Make sure the surrounding area is safe when opening or closing the trunk.
  - Make sure the trunk is properly closed when the vehicle is in motion.
  - Be mindful of windy conditions when opening or closing the trunk.
  - Before loading or unloading the trunk, make sure the lid is fully open and secure. The lid may start closing before fully opening.

### **Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking**

#### **Locking or unlocking the vehicle with the central locking**

See **P94** in "Driver's Door Switches".

#### **Locking or unlocking doors automatically**

- All doors automatically lock at vehicle speeds above 8 km/h.
- Press the START/STOP button to switch the ignition off. All doors unlock automatically.

#### **Locking/unlocking all doors concurrently**

- With the anti-theft alarm system disarmed, the backlight of the central lock button turns on if the vehicle is locked and off if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Pressing the central lock button locks all doors so that any attempt to open any door from the outside fails. At this time, pull the interior handle to unlock a door and pull a second time to open it.

## **REMINDER**

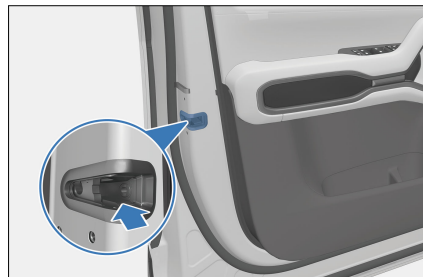
- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

### **Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key**

When the central locking system or the smart key fails, use the mechanical key for emergency locking or unlocking.

#### **Locking**

1. Open all doors other than the driver's door, insert the mechanical key into the door's keyhole and turn the key clockwise about 60°. You can then lock the doors by closing them.



2. After locking the three doors, open the driver's door.
3. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it clockwise as far as it

can go, return it to the initial position, and pull it out (See **P62**).

4. Close the driver's door.
5. Check whether all doors are securely locked.


### Unlocking

1. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it counterclockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out.
2. Pull the door handle again to open the driver's door.
3. Pull the interior handle twice to unlock the rest of the doors.

#### ! REMINDER

- Be careful not to turn the key too hard and distort or snap the key.

## Automatic Window Closing

- To enable or disable this function, go to the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Locks** → **Auto Windows Closing**.

### Automatic window closing upon vehicle locking

- When the "Auto Close Windows after Locking" is enabled, if the ignition is switched off, the driver's door is opened, and the hood, trunk, and all doors are closed, press the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.

### Automatic window closing on rainy days

- When the function is enabled and the vehicle ignition is on, all windows close automatically if the wiper sensor senses a certain amount of rain.

The enabled function works only once, and then works again after the vehicle is powered off and restarted.

## Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.

### Access

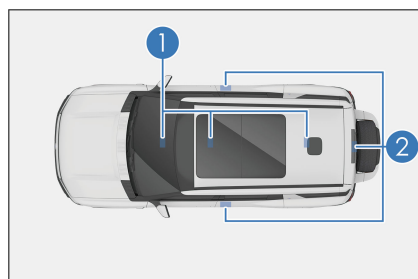
Use the valid smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors. (See **P63** and **P65** for details).

### Start-up

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle. (See **P134** for details).

### Antenna positions

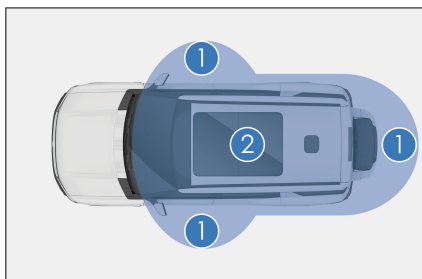
- ① Interior antenna
- ② Exterior antenna



### Active area

The smart access and start functions take effect only when the registered key fob is within the active area.

- ① Active area of the access function: about 1 m ± 20 cm from the front door handle and the exterior trunk switch.
- ② Active area of the start function: inside the cabin.



If another smart key is near this vehicle's smart key, unlocking may take longer than usual, which is normal.

### **!** REMINDER

In the following situation, smart access and start system may not work normally:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers, power stations, and broadcasting stations.
- The smart key is being carried along with a two-way radio, mobile phone or other communication devices.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.
- The smart key is too close to the handle.
- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.
- When the smart key battery runs out.
- The smart key is close to high-voltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.

### **!** REMINDER

- The smart key is being carried along with another smart key or radio-wave-emitting device.
  - Even within the active area, the smart key may not work properly in certain locations, for example, on the dashboard, in the glove box, or on the floor.
- If the smart access system is not working properly and it is impossible to enter the vehicle, use the mechanical key in the smart key to lock/unlock the driver's door, or lock/unlock all doors with the wireless remote control function.
  - Pressing the START/STOP button may not enable the start function due to:
    - Smart key failure. If the smart key warning light on the instrument cluster lights up, and the instrument cluster displays the message "Smart key power is low. Please replace the battery as soon as possible", the battery of the key may be exhausted.
    - The vehicle is started repeatedly in a short time. Wait for 10 seconds before starting the vehicle.
  - If the PEPS system cannot work normally due to system fault, take all smart keys to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.
- #### **Saving battery power**
- The smart key communicates with the vehicle even when the vehicle is not running. Therefore, do not leave the smart key in the vehicle or within 2 meters from the vehicle.
  - Receiving strong electromagnetic waves for a long time drains the battery of the smart key quickly. The

smart key must be kept at least one meter away from electrical equipment that generates a magnetic field, such as the following devices:

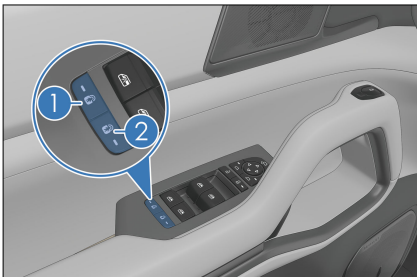
- Television
- Personal computer
- Phone charger
- Electroliers
- Fluorescent desk lamp

## Electronic Child Protection Lock

Child protection locks are designed to prevent children in rear seats from accidentally opening rear doors. Such locks are provided on the sides of the left and right rear doors.

- ① Left child protection lock
- ② Right child protection lock

Press the left/right child protection lock button to disable the left/right rear window switch and the interior door window handle. To open the door, use the exterior door handle.



### WARNING

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, ensure that the doors are closed and the child protection lock function is enabled.

### WARNING

- Proper use of seat belts and activation of child protection lock helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in an accident, and also prevents a door from being opened accidentally.

## Seats

### Seat Precautions

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedals, steering wheel, and dashboard controls are within the driver's easy control.
- While driving, the most effective safeguard is to keep the seatback upright, always rest well on the seatback, and adjust the seat belt to the right position.
- Rear and second row seats cannot be folded when the vehicle is running.
- Secure your luggage appropriately to prevent it from skidding or moving. Luggage in the vehicle should not be higher than seatbacks.
- The head support can only protect your head when it is in the proper position. Remember to adjust it to the proper position if it has been moved.

### WARNING

- Sitting on a folded seatback, in the trunk, or on the cargo is prohibited. Improper seating position or improperly fastened seat belts can result in personal injuries in case of emergency braking or a collision.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Do not place any items under the seats. The driver may lose control of the vehicle because items placed there affect the seat locking mechanism, causing the seat to move suddenly.
- When adjusting the seat, ensure sufficient space around the seat and in the rear seating area for children, passengers, or pets. Avoid squeezing or trapping children, occupants, or pets in the rear seat area.
- When adjusting the seat, ensure sufficient space between your feet and those of surrounding passengers to avoid injury.
- When adjusting the seat, do not place your hand under the seat or near its operating parts, to prevent being crushed.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean back to confirm the seatback is locked. Seatbacks that are not fully locked can cause personal injuries in an accident or during emergency braking.
- Do not put the seatback down while driving or riding in the vehicle. This makes the shoulder strap of the seat belt not properly attached to the body. As a result, you and your passengers could hit the strap in an accident, causing serious injury to the neck or other parts; or you and your passenger may slip out of the waist belt, resulting in other serious injuries.
- Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion, as unpredictable seat movement can cause the loss of vehicle control.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Do not drive the vehicle until occupants are seated properly.
- Do not allow children to adjust the seat without adult supervision to avoid any injury.

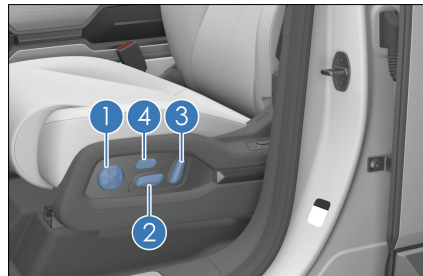
**⚠ CAUTION**

- Adjust the seat position before fastening the seat belt.

## Adjusting Front Seats

### ① Mode key group adjustment

- Press the middle button of the mode button group to enter the seat adjustment interface of the infotainment touchscreen.
- Before the mode selection is awakened, that is, before the middle key is pressed, the four-way key is operated. At this time, the four-way key is memorized as the last adjustment mode.



- The mode adjustment circulates in the sequence of lumbar support → massage → flank support, and is switched by the middle button of the mode button group.
- In the lumbar support mode, press the up/down button to inflate the up/down air bag, press the front button

to inflate the middle air bag, and press the rear button to deflate any air bag.

- In the massage mode, press the upper and lower buttons to switch the massage mode, and press the front and back buttons to adjust the massage intensity.
- In the flank adjustment mode, press the upper and lower buttons to inflate and deflate the backrest flanks.

#### ② Seat position adjustment button

- Move the switch forward or rearward to change the seat fore and aft position.
- Move the front end of the switch up or down to adjust the seat base angle (only for the driver seat).
- Move the rear end of the switch up or down to adjust cushion height.

#### ③ Seatback angle adjustment button

- Tilt the switch backward or forward to recline seatback.

#### ④ Leg support adjustment button

- Press the front or rear end of the switch to adjust the leg support.

### ! REMINDER

- The above adjustment can also be performed by selecting the corresponding seat in the seat adjustment interface of the infotainment touchscreen.
- Releasing the button stops the seat in this position. Do not place anything under the seat as this may prevent the seat from operating.

### ! REMINDER

- Do not move the front seats too far forward to avoid contact with the roof or sun visor.

### The copilot boss key


The boss button is on the side of the copilot seat, and there are two buttons.

- ① Front passenger seat backrest adjustment button
  - Tilt the switch backward or forward to recline seatback.
- ② Front passenger seat position adjustment button
  - Move the switch forward or rearward to change the seat fore and aft position.



### Memory System

#### Memory setting controls

Set memory locations on the infotainment touchscreen →  → Seat adjustment. Three memory locations can be set on the driver seat and two memory locations on the front passenger seat.

#### Memory setting function

- Memory setting conditions
  - The ignition has been switched on and the vehicle speed is zero.

- The driver's seat and side mirrors have been adjusted to the desired positions.
- No operation is made on the driver's seat and side mirrors.
- Memory setting method
  - Press and hold any position button on the seat memory setting interface. Then the positions of the seats and side mirrors will be recorded with the infotainment system prompting "Location saved" to confirm the memory setting is complete.
  - Briefly press any position button on the seat memory setting interface to restore the previous memory position.

### Memory recall function

Memory recall function with the ignition on

- With the gearshift lever in the "P" position, pressing any of the memory system switches enables the driver's seat memory system to perform memory wake-up, if:
  - The anti-theft alarm system has disarmed.
  - The vehicle speed is zero.
  - Memory switch signals are valid.
- You can interrupt the current memory recall operation by the following methods:
  - Press or toggle any of the driver's seat adjustment switches.
  - Tap any position button on the seat memory setting interface of the infotainment system.

### WARNING

- Ensure there are no obstacles around the seat before activating the seat memory recall function.
- Ensure that no part of your body is within the seat's movement range during the seat memory recall process.
- Do not allow children to operate the memory switches to prevent any injury during seat movement.

### Automatic driver seat

- Auto rearward
  - This feature moves the seat (if positioned close to the front stop) rearward by a certain distance when you unlock with the smart key and open the driver's door. This allows for some room for entry.
  - For easy exiting, this feature also works when the vehicle power is switched from "START" to "STOP" and the driver's door is opened.
- Auto forward
  - The seat returns to its last position when the ignition is turned from off to on and the driver's door closes, if the seat has not been horizontally adjusted after auto rearward triggered upon the last power-off and door opening.
  - If no horizontal position adjustment is performed after the auto-back feature is triggered for easy exiting, the seat will automatically move forward after the driver's door is closed.
- User settings
  - Users can open or close the driver seat greeting by the infotainment

touchscreen → ⚙️ → Drive →  
**Comfort Driving.**

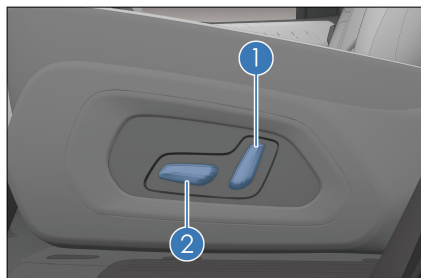
- The automatic driver seat function can be interrupted by closing the driver's door while the seat is moving backward or by opening the driver's door while the seat is moving forward.

## Adjusting Second-Row Seats

### Adjusting second-row seats (seven seater)

The second row seat adjustment includes seat back adjustment, seat position adjustment, seat reclining function and convenient access function.

- ① Adjusting seatback angle button
  - Tilt the switch backward or forward to recline seatback.
- ② ②Seat position adjustment button
  - Move the switch forward or rearward to change the seat fore and aft position.



### Seat reclining function

- Users can recline the second row seat by the infotainment touchscreen → 🖱️ → Seats.
- Users can recline the second row seat by the **P99**.

### Convenient access button

- Press the button on the shoulder of the quarter seat in the middle row, and the right seat will move forward and turn forward at a certain angle so that the rear passengers can get on and off.



### ⚠️ WARNING

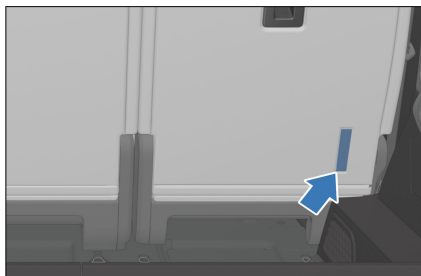
- After pressing the button function response, it is forbidden to adjust the seat button and pull the emergency stretch to avoid damaging the seat.
- When the right seat in the second row is not fully returned, passengers are not allowed to seat.

### ⚠️ CAUTION

- Please operate the button when the vehicle is stationary.
- When the right seat in the middle row is occupied or the seat belt is fastened, the convenient access function will not be available.
- After pressing the button function response, the front passenger seat will give way. Please pay attention to safety.

Emergency pull rope for rear row passenger

- When the vehicle is powered off and the middle row seat cannot be moved, the right quarter seat of the middle row can be put down by pulling the pull rope.



### CAUTION

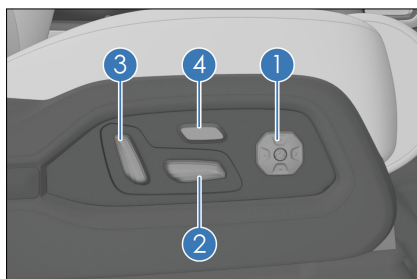
- If the pull rope is pulled under normal conditions of the vehicle, the seat back electric adjustment will fail to work. At this time, manually lift the seat backrest to the locking position (hear the locking sound) to restore the electric adjustment of the backrest.

### Adjusting second-row seats (six seater)

The second row seat adjustment includes seat back adjustment, seat position adjustment, leg support adjustment and seat massage.

#### ① Mode key group adjustment

- Press the middle button of the mode button group to enter the seat adjustment interface of the infotainment touchscreen.
- The middle row seats only have massage function. Press the middle button to start the massage, and press again to stop.



#### ② Seat position adjustment button

- Move the switch forward or rearward to change the seat fore and aft position.

#### ③ Seatback angle adjustment button

- Tilt the switch backward or forward to recline seatback.

#### ④ Leg support adjustment button

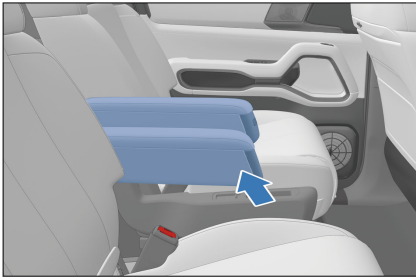
- Press the front or rear end of the switch to adjust the leg support.

### REMINDER

- The above adjustment can also be performed by selecting the corresponding seat in the seat adjustment interface of the infotainment touchscreen.

### Second row armrest adjustment

- The height of the armrest of the second row seat can be adjusted within a certain range.
- To lay the armrest flat, first lift the armrest to the highest locking position and then lay it down.
- Lift the armrest of the second row seat before accessing the third row seat.

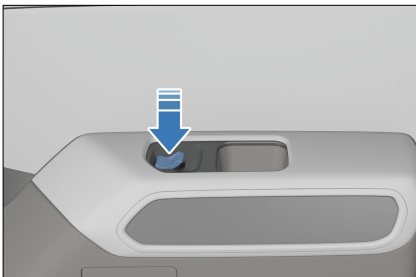


## Adjusting Rear Seats

Rear seat adjustment includes seat back adjustment and one-button reclining.

### Adjusting the seatback

- The button for adjusting the backrest angle of the rear seats is located on the armrests on the left and right sides of the rear seats. The backrest angle can be adjusted by pressing/pulling up this button.



### Recline button

- The rear seat recline button is located on the right side of the trunk (see **P99**).



- Do not fold the seat back or put the seatback down with the vehicle running.

## Head Supports

### Adjusting driver seat head support

- Lifting a head support

Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.

- Lowering a head support

Press and hold the adjustment button on the left of the head support, lower the head support to a proper position, and then release the button after hearing a locking sound.



### ! REMINDER

- The driver head support cannot be removed.

### Adjusting front passenger seat head support

- Lifting a head support

Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.

- Lowering a head support

Press and hold the adjustment button on the left of the head support (same as the step on driver seat), lower the head support to a proper position, and

then release the button after hearing a locking sound.

- Angle adjustment
  - Lift the head support in the direction of its vertical post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.
  - Press the button on the side of the headrest, push the headrest backward along the direction of the vertical headrest rod to the appropriate position, and release it after hearing the locking sound.



- Removing a head support

Press and hold the left and right head support adjustment buttons, remove the head support and release the button.
- Installing a head support

Move the headrest LOGO forward, then insert the headrest rod into the bushing, press the headrest down to a proper position and release it after hearing the locking sound.



#### ! REMINDER

- In order to avoid the headrest being unable to be pulled out due to the headrest being pushed against the roof when the headrest is removed, the front passenger's backrest can be adjusted backward by a certain angle before operation. Passenger seat backrest adjustment see **P72**.

#### Adjusting second-row seat head supports (seven seater)

- Lifting a head support

Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.
- Lowering a head support

Press and hold the head support adjustment button (same as the step on driver seat), lower the head support to a proper position, slightly adjust the head support, and release the button after hearing a locking sound.



- Removing a head support

Press and hold the left adjustment button of the head support, remove the head support and release the button.

- Installing a head support

Move the headrest LOGO forward, then insert the headrest rod into the bushing, press the headrest down to a proper position and release it after hearing the locking sound.

### Adjusting second-row seat head supports (six seater)

- Lifting a head support

Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.

- Lowering a head support

Press and hold the adjustment button on the left of the head support, lower the head support to a proper position, slightly adjust the head support, and release the button after hearing a locking sound.



- Removing a head support

Press and hold the left and right head support adjustment buttons, remove the head support and release the button.

- Installing a head support

Move the headrest LOGO forward, then insert the headrest rod into the bushing, press the headrest down to a proper position and release it after hearing the locking sound.

### Adjusting a rear seat head support

- Lifting a head support

Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.

- Lowering a head support

When the rear seat is reclined, the rear headrest will automatically descend to the lowest position.


### WARNING

- The lowest position of the rear headrest is the non-use position. When the passenger is sitting in the rear row, please lift the headrest to the use position, otherwise it will threaten the safety of the passenger.

## ! REMINDER

- Head supports protect vehicle occupants from head and neck injuries. Adjust the head support so that its center aligns with the back of your head for maximum protection. Adjust the head support to the proper position based on your actual height.
- When adjusting head support height, align the occupant's ear tip line with the center line of the head support.
- After adjusting the head support, ensure that it is locked into position.
- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports.
- Do not attach any objects to the head support levers.

## Seat Ventilation

- Enable or disable seat ventilation via the "Convenience" interface by swiping down from the top status bar of the infotainment touchscreen or via the infotainment touchscreen →  → Ventilation.


### Ventilation adjustment

- Seat ventilation: Operate the seat ventilation sliding strip on the infotainment touchscreen to control the working gear of the ventilation fan, and there are five gears on the seat ventilation.
- The ventilation system is turned off by default after each power-on.

## Seat Massage

- This vehicle is equipped with seat massage function, which can be turned on or off through mode button group, infotainment touchscreen or voice.
- The seat massage cannot be used while lumbar support adjustment is active.
- Seat massage: Voice command such as "open massage" memorizes the last adjustment mode and gear by default. You can control the intensity upshifting or downshifting via voice commands, such as: Increase the massage intensity by 1 level for each upshift or downshift. You can also give a voice command to change message mode, such as: Change to the stretch mode.
- The sequence of message mode is "Wave (default) → Pulse → Stretch → Relax → Relieve → Wave". When message function is activated via voice command, the four-way directional button defaults to adjust it. Pressing the "Up" button cycles through the modes in sequence, while pressing the "Down" button cycles in reverse order. The modes can be cycled continuously.
- The massage mode automatically ends 15 minutes if there is no further operation following the last adjustment action. To continue, simply press the seat massage button or activate the massage via the infotainment touchscreen.


## Adjusting Seats\*

- Users can set by the infotainment touchscreen →  → Seats.
- You can choose to adjust the seat status of the main driver, the co-driver, the left side of the middle row, the

right side of the middle row, the left and right sides of the rear row.

- The front and rear positions of the seat, the height of the seat cushion and the angle of the backrest can be adjusted according to the arrows on the interface.
- The vehicle is equipped with a memory system, which can save the set seat position by pressing and holding the position button on the left side of the interface. (See Seats **P73** for details)

### Lie down the copilot

- Select the front passenger seat and enable the front passenger seat reclining function by the infotainment touchscreen →  → Seats.
- After the function is enabled, the front passenger seat moves forward, and the backrest of the seat is laid backward and bridged to the right seat in the second row; meanwhile, the backrest of the right seat in the second row will tilt backward to a certain angle.



### WARNING


- When the function is turned on, the front passenger, the right side of the middle row and the right side of the rear row are prohibited.

### CAUTION


- The front passenger headrest shall be removed before the function is enabled. (For details, see Adjusting Front Passenger Seat Head Support in **P77**.)
- When any of the front passenger seat, the right seat of second row, and the right seat of the third row is occupied or the seat belt is fastened, the reclining function will not be available.

## Seat Mode

### Folding seats

- Users can enable or reset the folding of the second and third row seats by the infotainment touchscreen →  → Seats.
- The third row folding: Press the open button, the third row seat headrest will automatically lower, and the seat back will automatically fold flat; press the reset button, the third row seat will return to its original position.
- The second or third row folding: Press the open button, and the second/third row seats are folded flat at the same time; press the reset button, and return to the original position at the same time.

### Comfortable bed

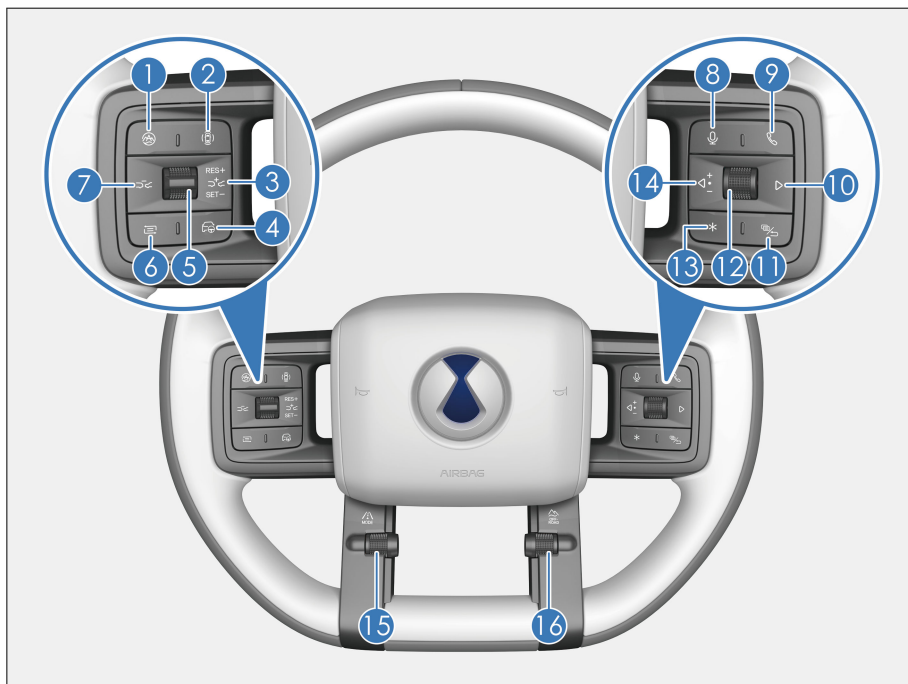
- Users can enable the comfortable bed by the infotainment touchscreen →  → Seats.
- Enabling the function
  1. Remove items from the middle/rear seats.
  2. After pressing the open button, leave the front row as soon as possible.

3. After 10 seconds, the front seats move forward to avoid collision, and the backrests of the middle and rear seats are folded flat.

- Function reset: Press the reset button to reset the three rows of seats at the same time.

# Steering Wheel

## Steering Wheel Switches



- |                                  |                            |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 Intelligent mode button        | 9 Call                     |
| 2 360 panoramic view button      | 10 Right                   |
| 3 Distance +                     | 11 Instrument cluster/Back |
| 4 ICC button                     | 12 Scroll button           |
| 5 Reset/+ or Set/- rocker switch | 13 Custom                  |
| 6 Driving information            | 14 Left                    |
| 7 Distance -                     | 15 Mode                    |
| 8 Speech recognition             | 16 Off-road scroll button  |

The audio control switch is operational when the ignition is switched on.

### Left-hand buttons

### Rocker switch

- Reset/+: The driver assistance function increases the target vehicle speed. Creep mode turn up the gear.
- Setup/-: The driver assistance function increases the target vehicle speed. Creep mode turn down the gear.

### Distance -/Distance +

- Adjust the time interval to the vehicle in front in the driver assistance function.

### ICC button

- Press this button to enter or exit intelligent cruise control (ICC).



#### REMINDER

- For details of the driver assistance system, refer to **P172** and **P180**.

### 360 panoramic view button

- Press this button to enter or exit panoramic view.



#### REMINDER

- Panoramic system details please, see **P213**.

### Intelligent mode button

- Press this button to enter or exit the intelligent mode.

### Driving information

- Press this button to switch the driving information interface. Press and hold to clear the relevant driving information.

### Right-hand buttons

#### Scroll button

- Roll the button upward to increase the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the highest.
- Roll the button downward to decrease the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the lowest.
- Press down the button to mute.

#### Left/Right button

- When the infotainment system is in radio mode:
  - Press the ◀ button to play the previous radio station.
  - Press the ▶ button to play the next radio station.
- When the infotainment system is in USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music app/other modes:
  - Press the ◀ button to play the previous track (track number -1).
  - Press the ◀ button to select a record upward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
  - Press the ▶ button to play the next track (track number +1).
  - Press the ▶ button to select a record downward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.

#### Call

- Press this button to make or receive a call (the audio system is muted at the same time).
- When a Bluetooth-unrelated screen is currently displayed, press this button to switch to the phone selection screen if Bluetooth is disconnected, or to the dial screen if Bluetooth is connected.
- After entering a phone number on the Dial screen or selecting a record on the

Call Log or Contacts screen, press this button to dial the number.

- When Bluetooth is connected, but no phone number is entered on the Dial screen, press this button to switch to the call log screen. Press this button again to call the first dialed number on the call history.

#### Speech recognition

- Press this button. The voice recognition screen is displayed and you can say the desired voice command.
- Press a second time to exit speech recognition.

#### Instrument cluster/Back

- When not on the Bluetooth call screen, press this button to select the lower menu items.
- In the bluetooth call interface, press the instrument/return button to end the call.

#### Custom

- Press for a long time to enter the custom button setting interface to select the custom function button; press for a short time to execute the custom function.

#### Horn

- Press the horn button area to honk the horn, and release to stop honking.

#### CAUTION

- Avoid pressing honking for too long, as the horn may be damaged.

#### REMINDER

- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

#### Lower scroll button

##### Mode

- Turn the scroll button to switch between ECO/NORMAL/SPORT modes.

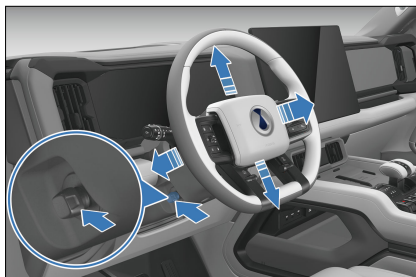
##### Off-road scroll button

- Turn the scroll button to switch between snow/sand/mud/mountain/rock modes.

## Adjusting the Steering Wheel

#### Adjusting Steering Wheel with Power

- When the vehicle is in "OK"/"ON" gear, the steering wheel can be adjusted.
- Toggle the electronic switch up/down/forward/backward to adjust the angle or axial position of the steering wheel.



#### WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving. Otherwise, misoperation may lead to accidents.

## ! WARNING

- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to verify that it is securely locked.

### Steering Assist Mode Settings

- The feel of steering assistance varies from person to person, and so do the evaluation and needs for this feel.
- To set the steering assist mode, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙️ → **Drive** → **Driving Control**, and select Comfort or Sport.

## ! REMINDER

- Setting the steering mode to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed. Steering assist mode settings can only be changed in ECO, NORMAL, and SPORT mode with LKS off and a vehicle speed lower than 80 km/h.

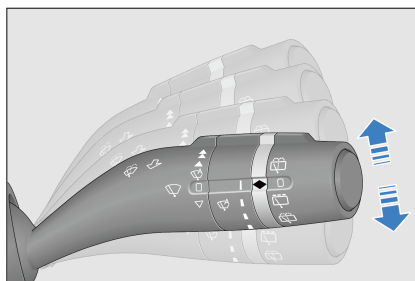
# Wipers

## Wiper Switch

### Front Windshield Wipers and Washer

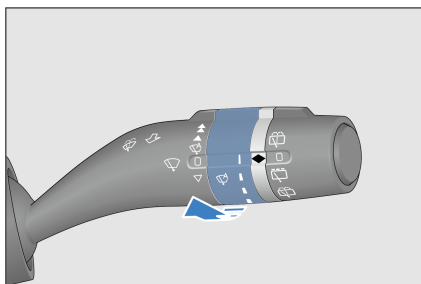
- Push up or pull down the lever to select among the five modes:
  - ⬆️ : Fast
  - ⬇️ : Slow
  - 🌧️ : Auto/Intermittent wipers
  - ☐ : OFF

- ▽ : Point-wiping (pulling down the lever from ☐ and the wipers wipe at a low speed until you release the lever).




### Auto wipers/Intermittent

- The rain sensor is located on the front windshield inside the vehicle, in front of the rearview mirror. It automatically controls the operation mode of wipers based on the rainfall.
- To enable the auto wiper function, turn the wiper switch to the automatic mode, and enable auto wiper on infotainment touchscreen → ⚙️ → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**.
- To use the intermittent wiper function, turn the wiper switch to the automatic mode, and disable auto wiper on infotainment touchscreen → ⚙️ → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**.
- Turn the knob to change the rain sensor sensitivity based on real-time rain conditions. A total of four levels are available.
  - Upward: reduces rain sensor sensitivity.
  - Downward: increases rain sensor sensitivity.




### ! WARNING

- With the ignition on and the wiper switch at , touching the glass on the top of the sensor by hand or wiping it with a cloth may cause the wiper to work and thus lead to an accident.
- Turn off the automatic mode of wiper during the vehicle washing process, in dry seasons or in rainless weather to prevent inadvertent wiper operation.


### ! CAUTION

- If snow or other debris causes the wipers to stop mid-operation, turn off the wipers and park the vehicle in a safe location. Then clear the snow or debris to allow the wipers to function correctly.
- The sensor may occasionally fail to properly detect snowflakes, as they have various shapes, which could lead to wiper malfunction. After the snow melts, the wipers may automatically activate.

### ! REMINDER

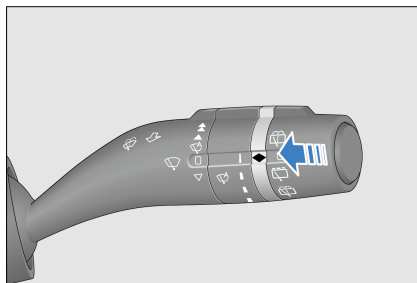
- With the wiper handle at , the wiper will perform a wiping action whenever the wiping sensitivity is

### ! REMINDER



increased by one shift; when the wiper is turned from OFF to , the wiper will perform a wiping action.

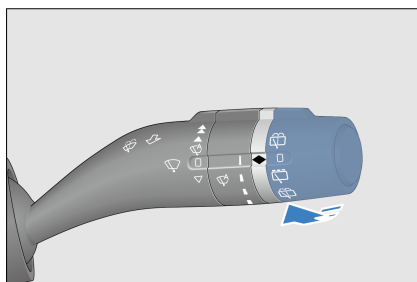
### Front windshield washer


Pull up (toward the steering wheel) the wiper switch for the system to only spray water without wiping if pull-up time is short (within 0.5 seconds), or spray water continuously for 10 seconds and wipe it at a low speed if pull-up time is long. Release the wiper switch for the wiper to automatically wipe two times and then return to its original position.

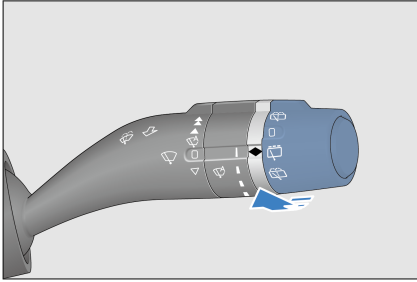



### 后风窗玻璃刮水器及洗涤剂

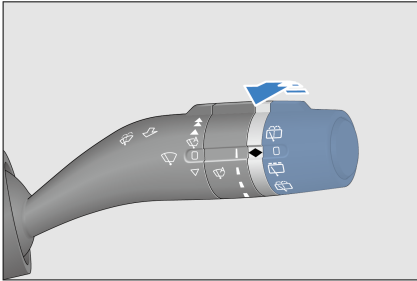
- 将雨刮开关末端旋钮转到  位置，后风窗刮水器启动；将旋钮转到“”挡，刮水器停止工作。



- 将开关旋转到后雨刮位置  并保持，后风窗刮水器和洗涤器同时启动。



- 把开关旋转到后雨刮位置  并释放。在喷射洗涤液之后，刮水器还将工作 2 次。



#### 说明


- 定期检查刮片，清除粘在刮片上的污物。
- 如刚下雨时就开启雨刮，雨水混合着泥沙、灰尘，不但刮不干净风窗玻璃，反而在瞬间造成视野一片模糊，影响行车安全。
- 请使用玻璃清洗剂。水或其他类型洗涤剂可能会导致洗涤电机损坏。

## Replacing Wiper Blades

Inspect front/rear wiper blades for cracks or partial hardening at least every six months. If these findings are noted, wiper blades should be replaced. Otherwise,

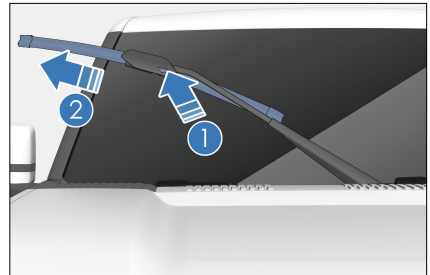
the windshield will streak or will be left unclean after wiping.

### Replacing Wiper Blades

When the vehicle is powered on, enable or disable the front/rear wiper check function on the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Drive** → **Overhaul**. When the corresponding wiper check function is enabled, the wipers rotate out for easy maintenance and replacement.

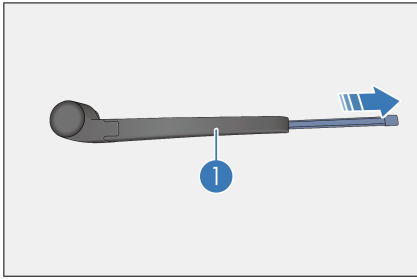
#### Replacing front wiper

1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.
2. Press the wiper lock button ①.
3. Hold the wiper blade and pull it out along the indicated direction ②;
4. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



#### Replacing rear wipers

1. Pull up the wiper arm;
2. Hold the wiper in position ①, and pull the blade out along the indicated direction.
3. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



### CAUTION

- Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the hood and wiper arms.
- Handle wiper blades with care. Do not push the wiper arm to let the wiper blade straightly strike onto the windshield.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.
- In rainy and snowy days in winter, it is recommended to go to the overhaul interface to enable front wiper check. Manually lift the front wipers to prevent them from freezing.

## Mirrors

### Interior Rearview Mirrors

#### Automatic Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror

- The automatic anti-glare rearview mirror is equipped with electronic anti-glare function, which automatically adjusts the lens color of the mirror according to the surroundings to reduce the interference of rear glare on the driver's field of vision.


- Move the rearview mirror up, down, left, or right to a suitable position.

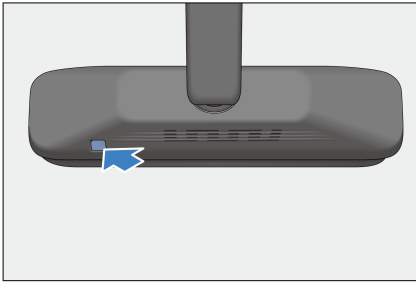



### WARNING

- Do not hang heavy objects from the interior rearview mirror, or shake or drag it with force.
- To avoid the mirror falling off, do not adjust the mirror forcibly if it is stuck.
- Adjusting the interior rearview mirror before driving. Do not adjust the rearview mirror while driving. This may distract your attention and cause accidents.

#### Streaming Interior Rearview Mirror\*

- Move the rearview mirror up, down, left, or right to a suitable position.
- Streaming media mode
  - The streaming media rearview mirror can be turned on or off through the button on the rear side of rear view mirror) or by the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Audio&Display** → **Streaming media rearview mirror**.



- When enabled, real-time images captured by the rear camera can be displayed on the streaming rearview mirror screen. Turn on screen adjustment on the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Audio&Display** → **Streaming rearview mirror** to adjust the view height, screen luminance and image size by the right and left direction buttons, and adjust the gear by the right scroll button.

### REMINDER

- Use the button on the right side of the steering wheel to adjust the streaming rearview mirror according to the prompt information on the infotainment touchscreen. The infotainment touchscreen is only used for prompt, and the streaming media rearview mirror cannot be adjusted on it.
- Since the interior rearview mirror includes a traditional flat mirror function, the mirror effect and the streaming media image may appear simultaneously in strong light conditions, causing a ghosting phenomenon. In this case, manually adjust the interior rearview mirror angle to avoid ghosting and improve the visual field effect.

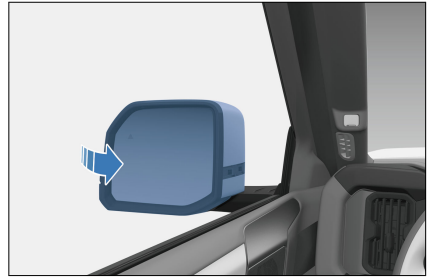
- Traditional interior rearview mirror mode
  - When the streaming mode is turned off, the rearview mirror enters the traditional rearview mirror mode. In this mode, the rearview mirror presents the mirror effect.

## Power Side Mirrors


### Folding Side Mirrors

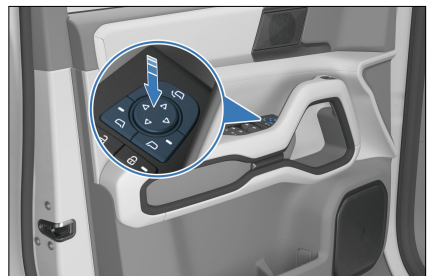
#### Folding side mirrors manually

- Push the outer edge of a side mirror to rotate it around the folding axis to the locked position.



#### Folding side mirrors with power

- Press the  button to fold the side mirrors with power. Press the button again to unfold the mirrors.
- Both side mirrors fold automatically when the anti-theft alarm system is armed, and extend automatically when the system is disarmed.



## Side mirror reversing assist

- When the ignition is switched on, the side mirrors automatically flip down a certain degree while reversing to provide the driver with a better view.

### WARNING

- Adjust the side mirrors before driving. Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. This may distract your attention, causing accidents.

### REMINDER

- For the introduction of the side mirror button, see **P90**.

## Side Mirror Defrosters

Tap the rear defroster button on the A/C operation interface, and the heating panel in side mirrors will quickly clear the side mirrors.

### REMINDER

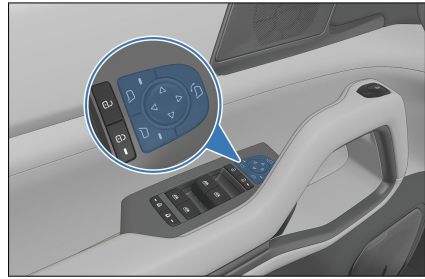
- Using the side mirror electric heating defrosting function for a long time may cause the mirror to wear out faster. Turn off the defrost button when it is not needed.

## Side Mirror Adjustment Buttons

### Side mirror adjustment buttons

 Left side mirror button

 Right side mirror button



### Side mirror adjustment control


Press this button to adjust the side mirror lens to a right position.

### Side mirror folding control

Press this button to fold or expand side mirrors.


# Switches

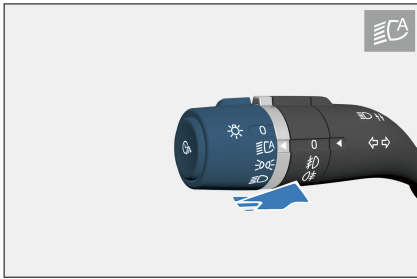
## Light Switches

Set the light switch to  to turn off all lights except for daytime running lights.



### Auto lights

Set the light switch to . The BCM captures the brightness data from the light intensity sensor to automatically turn the position lights and low beam on or off.



### ! REMINDER

- The light intensity sensor is located on the top of the windshield. Do not block the sensor or let anything splash on it.

### Position lights

Set the light switch to ☞☞ to turn on position lights.

- To turn on/off the daytime running light/front middle light by the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙️ → Light → Exterior Light.

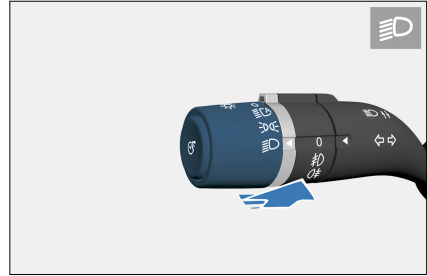


- Turn off the daytime running lamp, turn on the front middle position lamp, adjust to the small lamp gear, and turn on the position lamp.
- Turn on the daytime running lamp, whether the front middle position lamp is turned on or not, adjust it to the small lamp gear, and turn on the daytime running lamp (i.e. daytime running lamp).

- When the vehicle is in non-P gear, adjust it to the small lamp gear, and turn on the daytime running lamp (daytime running lamp).

### Low beam

Set the light switch to ☞☞ to turn on the low beam.



### Front fog light

Switch the end knob of the light switch to ☞☞, and rotate the middle knob of light switch to ☞☞, the front fog light is turned on.




### Rear fog lights

Switch the end knob of the light switch to ☞☞, and rotate the fog light dial to ☞☞ to turn on rear fog light.



### High beam

Set the light switch to  and push the light switch lever down (away from the steering wheel) to turn on the high beam.



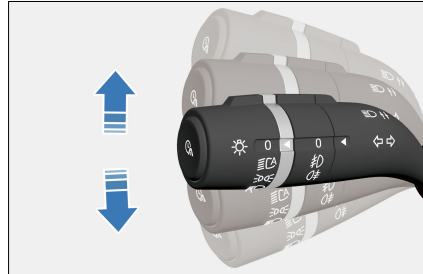
### Overtaking light

Pull up the lever (toward the steering wheel) to turn on the overtaking light. Release the lever for the light switch to automatically reset. The overtaking light turns off.





### Turn signals

- Push up the lever to signal right turn. The right turn signal and its indicator on the instrument cluster flash.
- Pull down the lever to signal left turn. The left turn signal and its indicator on the instrument cluster flash.





- Once turned on, turn signals continue flashing even after the lever is released. They will turn off after the turn is complete. Depending on the driver's driving habits, the turn signals may reset after a full turn of the steering wheel.

### Auto light off

- To activate this feature, To activate this function, set the light switch to  or  and switch off the vehicle power.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off after 10 seconds if the driver's door is closed.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off after 10 minutes if the driver's door is open.
- After the lights turn off automatically, if the light status changes, these lights come on in the new status. If the conditions to activate the auto light off function are still met, the function is activated again.

- Disabling the auto light off feature: When the vehicle is powered on, the auto light off function is disabled, and the light switch can be operated normally.
- If the auto light off function has turned off the lights and the anti-theft alarm system has been armed, disarming the alarm system makes the lights come on again automatically. If the driver's door remains closed, the lights go off again after 10 seconds. But if any door is open, it turns off the light in 10 minutes.

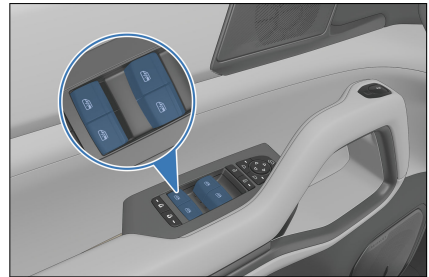
### Lighting delay

- Headlights After Exit:
  - Set the time for "Home lighting delay" on the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Light** → **Courtesy Light** (default: 10 seconds). With the light adjustment switch turned to "☀️", "☁️" or "☔️", when you power off the vehicle and are about to leave, the corresponding lights will light up for 10 seconds (or the set time) to provide lighting.
- Headlights Before Entry:
  - Set the time for "Headlights before Enter" on the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Light** → **Courtesy Light** (default: 10 seconds). With the light adjustment switch turned to "☀️", "☁️" or "☔️", when you unlock the vehicle and attempt to approach it, the corresponding lights will light up for 10 seconds (or the set time) to provide the leaving-home lighting.

## Driver's Door Switches

### Power Window Switches

- The switch on each door can be used to control the window.
- The ignition has to be switched on.
- The window control switch at the driver's side contains four buttons to roll up or down windows on four doors, respectively.
  - Press a switch to roll the window down.
  - Pull a switch to roll the window up.
- While using the switch, release it to stop window halfway.



- Driver's side power window: Press all the way down and release the switch to open the window. Lift all the way up and release the switch to close the window. Press the switch again to halt the current action.

### Anti-pinch function

- If someone or an object is caught by the window when it is rolling up, the window stops and rolls down a certain distance automatically.

### When automatic up or anti-pinch function fails

- Follow the steps below to restore the function.

- Pull up the window switch to raise the window glass to the top position and hold it there for about two seconds, and then press to lower the window glass to the bottom and hold it there for about two seconds. The automatic up and anti-pinch functions can be restored.

### Delay function

- After the vehicle is powered off, if the front doors are not open, the four-door window controller has a roll-up/down delay period of 10 minutes. During this period, the windows can still be rolled up and down. If either of the front doors is opened during this period, the delay function is canceled, and the switches can no longer be used to operate the windows.

### WARNING

- Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
- Follow the precautions below to prevent serious injuries or death from window closing:
  - Before operating the power windows, ensure that all passengers do not have any body parts that can be caught in the window.
  - Do not allow a child to operate the power windows.

### CAUTION

- Excessively frequent activation of the anti-pinch function can activate the regulator motor's overheat protection.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.

### CAUTION

- Contacting a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance is recommended if the windows' automatic closing function or anti-pinch function is not working normally.
- In the low temperature, if the space between the glass and frame of window is frozen or covered by ice and snow, resulting in failure of the normal operation of windows, it is forbidden to repeat operating windows to avoid damage to the glass lifting module or other parts. After the hot air of air conditioner warms the vehicle and thaws the glass, the normal lifting can be operated.

### Central Locking

The driver's door is equipped with power door switches. Use them to lock or unlock all doors.

#### ① Unlock

Press the central unlock button. All doors are unlocked and the red lock indicator turns off.

#### ② Lock

Press the central lock button. All doors are locked and the red lock indicator lights up.

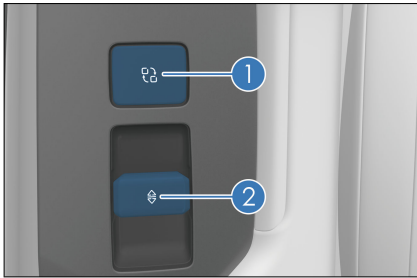


## Custom Button on Interior Door

The left and right rear doors are equipped with custom buttons, passengers can customize the button functions and adjust them.

### ① switch button

- Press the button to cycle through custom functions.
- Function cycle sequence:
  - Left: Second row window control → music control → sunshade control
  - Right: Second row window control → music control → sunshade control → comfortable lying function of boss seat



### ② Adjustment button

- Set functions of adjustment key ①:
  - Second row window control: Move forward and backward to control the lifting of the window on the opposite side of the middle row;
  - Music control: Move back and forth to switch the current playing music up/down (the background music playing can be activated if there is no music playing at present);
  - Sunshade control: The sunshade curtain can be opened/closed by moving back and forth;

- Boss seat reclining function (only on the right side): Move back and forth to execute/restore the state of the boss seat of the right seat in the second row.

### ⚠ WARNING

- When the comfortable reclining function of the boss seat is turned on, the co-driver and the right seat in the back row are not allowed to ride.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- When toggling the button to restore the boss seat on the right side of the middle row, please pay attention to retracting your legs so as not to squeeze your feet due to the return of the passenger seat.
- When the front passenger seat or the rear right seat is occupied or the seat belt is fastened, the reclining function will not be available.

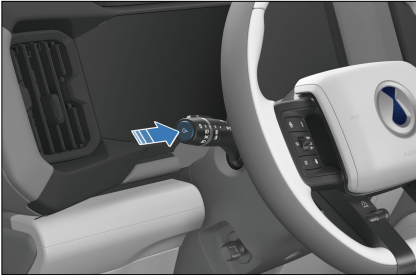
## Window Control Switch on Passenger's Side

- When the ignition is on or off (within the delay function period), use the front passenger and rear door window switches to operate the respective windows.





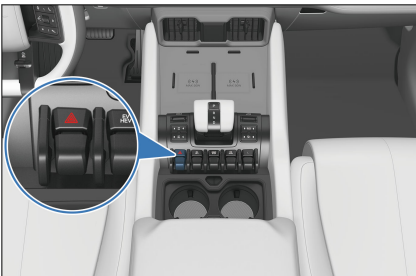
## Odometer Switch

- Press the odometer switch to select "Total Mileage" - "Mileage 1" - "Mileage 2" - "Total Mileage". The switching status is displayed accordingly on the instrument cluster.
- Press and hold "Mileage 1" and "Mileage 2" to clear the mileage information.



## Hazard Warning Light Switch

When the  button is pressed, all turn signals and turn signal indicators on the instrument cluster start flashing. They all stop flashing when the  button is pressed again.



## Sunroof Switch

### Panoramic Sunroof\*

- The sunroof can only be operated when the vehicle is powered on or when the power-off delay has not expired.

### Opening the sunroof

With the sunroof at any position (except fully open)

- Pull the sunroof switch backward to open the sunroof horizontally:
  - Gear one is manual. Release during action to freeze the sunroof in place.
  - Gear two is automatic. Pull the switch again during the action to freeze the sunroof in place.



With the sunroof at any position (except tilting/opening)

- Press the sunroof switch upward to tilt the sunroof open:
  - Gear one is manual. Release during action to freeze the sunroof in place.
  - Gear two is automatic. Press the switch again during the action to freeze the sunroof in place.

### Closing the sunroof

With the sunroof at any position (except fully closed)

- Push the sunroof switch forward to close the sunroof:
  - Gear one is manual. Release during action to freeze the sunroof in place.
  - Gear two is automatic. Pull the switch again during the action to freeze the sunroof in place.

#### ! REMINDER

- After desert off-road, it is recommended to clean sunroof guide rail and sealing strip.

### Anti-pinch Function

While it is closing, the sunroof/sunshade reopens for a certain distance if anything trapped is detected.

#### ! WARNING

- Keep clear of the sunroof when it is opening or closing. Serious injury occurs when passengers have their body parts caught in the sunroof.
- Passengers must refrain from sticking hands or their heads out through the sunroof. Otherwise, severe injury or even death may occur.

#### ! CAUTION

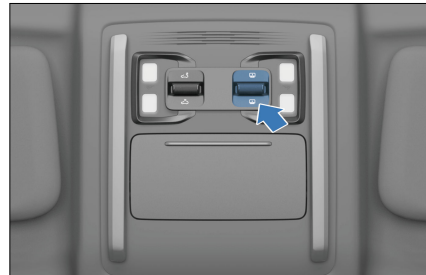
- Water may enter the cabin when operating the sunroof after rainy or snowy weather or after washing the vehicle. Wipe it clean with a dry cloth before operating.
- Trying to open the sunroof at outside temperatures below 0°C or when it is covered in snow or frost may damage the sunroof or its motor.

#### ! REMINDER

- The sunshade opens automatically when the sunroof is opening. When the sunroof pauses, the sunshade will then pause.

### Opening/Closing Sunshade

- Push the switch inward to open the sunshade:
  - Gear one is manual. Release during the action to freeze the sunshade in place.
  - Gear two is automatic. Push the switch again during the action to freeze the sunshade in place.



- Push the switch forward to close the sunshade:
  - Gear one is manual. Release during the action to freeze the sunshade in place.
  - Gear two is automatic. Push the switch again during the action to freeze the sunshade in place.

### Sunshade Anti-pinch

If the sunshade closing process is obstructed by anything, it will stop and slightly retract.

## Initialization

With the ignition on, if the signal remains valid and the sunroof is in the uninitialized state, try the following steps for initialization:

1. Press and hold the sunroof closing switch to make the sunroof move to the fully closed position and keep pressing. The sunroof initialization is then complete.
2. After the sunroof has been initialized and is fully closed, press and hold the sunshade closing switch to make the sunshade run to the fully closed position and keep pressing, and then the sunshade initialization is completed.

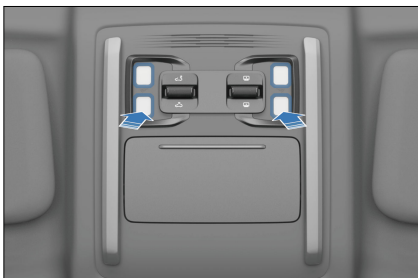
### CAUTION

- Do not release the sunroof/sunshade close button until initialization is complete.

## Interior Light Switches

### Front interior light switches

- Press the cover of interior light to turn on left/right interior lights. Press again to turn them off.



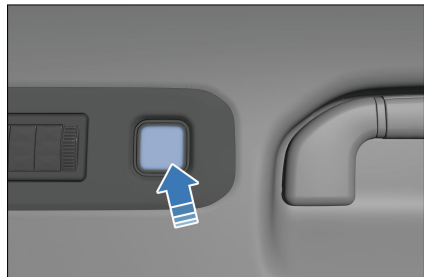
- When the vehicle is not powered off and the "DOOR" switch is turned on, when any door is open, interior lighting switches between high and

low brightness with touches on the light cover.

- With the ignition off and "DOOR" gear on, interior lights will go off after the door have remained open for a while. Any other operations during this period restart the timer.
- To select or unselect the DOOR option, slide down from the top of the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen.

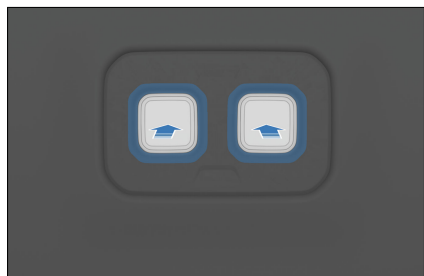
### Side Interior Light Switch

- In any ignition status, touch the cover of middle side interior lights to turn on the lights, and touch it again to turn off.




### Rear Interior Light Switches

- In any ignition status, touch the rear interior lights to turn on the lights, and touch it again to turn off.



## Ambient Lights

The user can go to the setting interface via infotainment touchscreen →  → **Light** → **Ambient Light** to control the brightness, colors and area of the ambient light.

## Trunk Switches

The trunk switch pack is located on the right side of the trunk enclosure.

- ① Middle/rear seat folding button
- ② Middle left seat folding/recovery/backrest manual adjustment button
- ⑦ Rear left seat folding/recovery/backrest manual adjustment button
- ④ Rear suspension raising\* button
- ⑤ Middle/rear seat recovery button
- ⑥ Middle row right seat folding/recovery/backrest manual adjustment button
- ⑦ Rear right seat folding/recovery/backrest manual adjustment button
- ⑧ Rear suspension lowering\* button



### WARNING

- When using the suspension lifting/lowering function, ensure there are no people or obstacles around the vehicle to avoid

### WARNING

causing personal injury or vehicle damage.

- When the folding function is turned on, the corresponding seat is forbidden to be used.

### CAUTION

- When using the folding function, the corresponding front seat will give way. Please pay attention to your safety.

### REMINDER

- ②③⑥⑦ Press/pull up the button once for one-button folding/recovery, and press/pull up continuously for manual adjustment of the backrest.

## Second-Row Control Panel

air conditioners, seats and other systems through the touch switch on the control panel in the middle row.

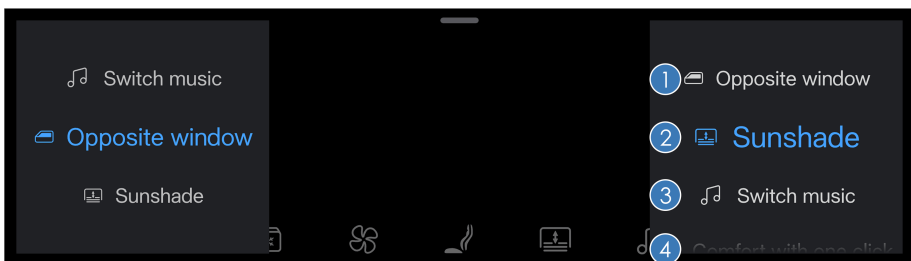
### Main control panel

Passengers in the second row can control the relevant functions of refrigerators,



- |   |   |    |   |
|---|---|----|---|
| 1 | Refrigerator door button                          | 9  | Rear seat function interface entrance                           |
| 2 | Refrigerator temperature plus button              | 10 | Sunshade function interface entrance                            |
| 3 | Refrigerator temperature minus button             | 11 | Music function interface entrance                               |
| 4 | Refrigerator ON/OFF                               | 12 | Sunshade opening/closing button                                 |
| 5 | Cooling   | 13 | Sunshade close/pause button                                     |
| 6 | Refrigerator heating button                       | 14 | Rear air conditioning temperature quick adjustment access       |
| 7 | Refrigerator function interface entrance          | 15 | Rear row air conditioner air volume quick body regulating inlet |
| 8 | Rear air conditioning function interface entrance |    |   |

### Roll down menu control panel



1 Opposite window button

2 Sunshade button

3 Music switch button

4 Comfort button



# 04

## USING AND DRIVING

Charging/Discharging Instructions .....	104
Batteries.....	121
Usage Precautions.....	124
Starting and Driving.....	134
Driver Assistance.....	166

# Charging/ Discharging Instructions

## Charging Instructions

### Charging Safety Warnings

- The charging connector uses high-voltage current. Minors are prohibited to charge the vehicle or touch the charging equipment. Keep them away from the vehicle during charging.
- Charge the vehicle in a safe environment, and avoid charging in thunderstorms, or areas with hazardous liquids, fire or heat sources, or flammable or explosive items.
- Use EV charging equipment that complies with local standards.
  - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider if there is a fault.
  - Ensure the quality of charging equipment.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and personal injury, never operate the equipment with wet hands or touch the exposed metal of the charge port or charge base.
- If anything abnormal is found in the vehicle or charging equipment during charging, such as peculiar smell or smoke, stop immediately and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- To prevent damage to the vehicle and the charge port, do not shake the charging connector during charging.
- Do not carry out maintenance work during charging.
- Always unplug the charging and discharging equipment and close the charge port door before driving.
- Close the AC charge port cap before DC charging\* and the DC charge port cap before AC charging.
- Before charging, ensure that the vehicle charging port, power supply socket, and charger connector are free of foreign matters such as water, and ensure that the metal terminals are not damaged or affected by rust or corrosion. Otherwise, please do not charge the vehicle.
- To prevent serious personal injury, pay attention to the following precautions during charging:
  - Do not touch the metal connection of the charge port, charging connector, or plug.
  - Do not charge or touch the vehicle in a thunderstorm. Lightning strikes may cause damage to the charging equipment or personal injuries.
- Since charging may affect medical electronic devices and even cause serious personal injury or death, if you use any medical electronic device (such as implantable pacemaker or implantable cardiovascular defibrillator), before charging, confirm with the device manufacturer whether charging affects the normal operation of the device.

### Charging Precautions

- AC and DC charging can be carried out in any power supply position. To ensure safety, it is recommended to power off the vehicle before charging. The vehicle can not be powered OK during charging.

- To prevent failure of the charge port door, do not open and close it repeatedly. The recommended time interval for opening and closing the port door is at least one second.
- If power supply resumes after short-time outage of the external power grid, BYD charging equipment will re-start charging automatically and no re-connection of the charging equipment is required.
- If the charge port door and charging connector are frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not forcibly open the charge port door or pull out the charging connector.
- Observe the following to prevent damage to the charging equipment (charging equipment precautions):
  - Before starting the vehicle, check that the charging equipment is disconnected. When the charging connector is loosely inserted, you may still be able to power on the vehicle and drive it off. This will damage the charging equipment and the vehicle.
  - Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is open.
  - Do not pull or twist the charging cable with force.
  - Prevent the charging equipment from suffering any mechanical impact such as fall and collide.
  - Do not store or use the charging equipment at a temperature above 50°C.
  - Do not place the charging equipment near heaters or other heat sources.
- Precautions before charging:
  - With the charge port unlocked, open the port, hold the charging connector, align the connector with the charge port and push it in, making sure that they are properly connected.
- Precautions during charging:
  - The A/C can be used as normal while the vehicle is being charged. However, the charging power may be reduced.
  - It is recommended to park the vehicle in a ventilated area during charging. Do not block the front of the vehicle within half a meter.
  - The estimated time until full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster. It is normal that it may vary slightly, depending on the temperatures, SOC and charging facilities.
  - Battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the hood.
  - Before charging is complete, battery equalization is activated for longer battery life and thus the charging time may be longer.
- Precautions after charging:
  - Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
  - Hold the charging connector, press the unlock button\* on the connector, and then pull it out.
  - After charging, unlock it first and then pull out the charging connector.
  - After unplugging the charging connector, make sure that the charge port's cap and door are closed, otherwise water or foreign materials may enter the port and affect its normal use.

- Too high or too low battery temperatures compromise vehicle charging performance.
- In the case of low-temperature charging, the battery thermal management can improve the low-temperature charging capacity of the battery, but the charging time is prolonged and the heating power consumption is increased. These are normal phenomena.
- In low-temperature regions, it is better to charge the vehicle in a heated space indoors.
- In high-temperature regions, charging in a cool and ventilated place is recommended.
- Recommendations for improving the driving experience:
  - When the SOC bar on the instrument cluster turns red, the high-voltage battery is about to be exhausted. Please charge it immediately.
  - It is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using it, for better charging performance.
- Mode 2 charging means charging with an AC charging connector. A dedicated

220V 50Hz 10A AC line and outlet is recommended. A dedicated line protects the line from tripping due to line breakage or high-power charging of the high-voltage battery. Using a non-dedicated line may affect the proper operation of other devices on the shared line.

- When the vehicle is not used for an extended period, it is recommended to charge it once a month at least.
- Suggestions for using mode 2 charging cable: To stop charging, remove the charging connector and then the power plug.



#### REMINDER

- During the charging process, if the user finds that the charging power of the instrument drops to 0 kW after unlocking with the key, door armrest or door handle, it is a normal phenomenon, and the normal charging will resume after 30 s.

### General Charging Troubleshooting

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
Charger is connected and charge starts, but battery cannot be charged.	Charging card in arrears or faulty charging pile.	Consult card balance or contact charging station staff.
	The low-voltage battery over-discharges.	Replace the low-voltage battery.
	The standard 220V 50Hz 10A grounded socket has no power supply.	Check whether the power supply is under overload protection and use other sockets.
	The vehicle or AC charging connector fails.	Stop charging and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider if power system fault warning light or charging system fault message is found on the instrument cluster.

	Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
Charging stops midway.		The high-voltage battery temperature is too high.	Cool down the high-voltage battery. Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal.
		The high-voltage battery has been fully charged.	When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging will stop automatically.
		Charging cable is not connected properly.	Verify that the charging connection cable is not loosely connected.
		The power is off.	After the power is restored in a period of time, the charging connection should be connected again to start charging.
		The high-voltage battery temperature is too high.	After the charging stops automatically, charge the battery after it cools down.
	Vehicle or charging pile fails.	Check if there is any charging pile or vehicle fault prompt, and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider if necessary.	

## Charging

- Check Before Charging:
  - Ensure that power supply equipment, charging connector, charge port, and charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - Make sure the metal terminals of power plug, socket, charging connector, or port are not loose or damaged by rust, corrosion, or ablation.
  - Make sure the charging connector, port, power plug, or socket is not visibly stained or damp. In any of the event, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure the connection is dry and clean.

- In any of these cases, do not charge. Otherwise, personal injury may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
- Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.

### Using Mode 2 Charging Cable

#### 1. Equipment

- This equipment includes a power plug (complying with local standards), an AC charging connector, a connector protective cover, a charging cable, and a control box, called mode 2 charging cable. The plug is connected to a standard household power socket, and the charging connector to the vehicle's AC charge port.
- A household socket meeting national standards must be used in order to avoid line damage or tripping due to high-power charging, which may affect the normal use of other devices.

- A dedicated 220V 50Hz 10A AC line and outlet is recommended.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

### **WARNING**

- The highest working temperature allowed for the charging equipment is 50°C. Store it in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When charging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires.
- When using the equipment, prevent it from getting rolled over by the vehicle, dropped, or trampled on.
- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/connector.
- Never use the charging equipment if the household power strip cable becomes soft, if the charging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or in case of any other damage.
- Never use the equipment if the charging connector, power plug, or power strip is disconnected or broken, or if there is any sign of surface damage.

### **CAUTION**

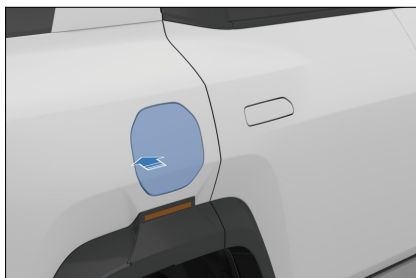
- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- See “Charging Instructions” for specific charging precautions.

### **REMINDER**

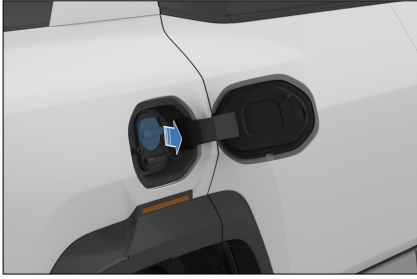
- It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider or local electrician to select an appropriate power supply according to requirements of the charging equipment.
- Charging equipment grounding instructions: The equipment must be properly grounded. In the event of failure of or damage to the equipment, the ground cable provides a minimum impedance to circuit discharge and thereby reducing the risk of electric shock. The equipment comes with a ground cable connecting its ground point with that of the power plug, which must match a properly installed and well-grounded power supply outlet.
- When using the mode 2 charging cable, enable the anti-theft function.

## 2. Charging

- Unlock the vehicle and open the charge port door.
- Open the charge port door:
  - With the vehicle unlocked, press the charging port door on the right side of the vehicle, and the charging port cover opens automatically.



- Open the AC charge port cap.



- Connect to the power supply terminal:
  - Plug the Mode 2 charging cable into a household socket and the charging indicator light on the control box or power supply plug will stay solid red.
- Connect to the vehicle port:
  - Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.
  - After the charging connector is inserted, the charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster. The AC charging indicator light is always red and the green light is flashing.



- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
  - At this point, you can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See **P113** for the configuration process.

### 3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - The charging automatically ends when the vehicle is fully charged.
  - To end the charging early, proceed to the next step.
- Unplug the charging connector:
  - If the immobilizer system is disabled on the infotainment touchscreen, you can press the button\* on the charging connector and pull it out.
  - If the immobilizer is activated on the infotainment touchscreen, press the unlock button on the key or press the door handle microswitch with the key nearby, and then pull out the charging connector.



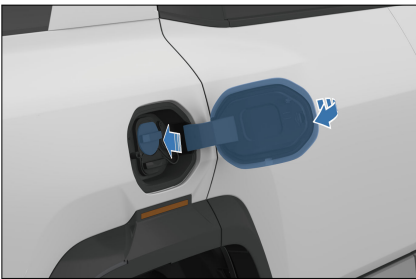
#### ! REMINDER

- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlock button on the smart key (when charging the vehicle with ignition off) or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).
- When the immobilizer system is active, unlock the vehicle to release the charge port immobilizer before pulling out the charging connector. The connector has to be pulled out within 30 seconds, or the port will re-lock.

## ! REMINDER

- You can activate or deactivate the immobilizer on the infotainment touchscreen, see **P119** for details.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see **P120** in "Charging Port Immobilizer System".

- Disconnect the power plug.
- Close the charge port door.
- Store the equipment in the luggage storage box or the net bag.



## Using AC Charger (AC Charging Port)\*

### 1. Equipment


- The single-phase AC charging box\*
  - Charge with a charging box. For the use of its equipment, refer to its user manual and follow the operating steps.
  - The single-phase AC charging box It consists of a charging box, a charging connector, and a connecting cable. For information on circuit breaker and emergency stop switch, see the charging box user manual.
- Single-phase AC charging pile

- Charge the vehicle using a public single-phase AC charging pile. Since some charging piles are not equipped with charging connectors, AC charging connectors need to be prepared.
- Three-phase AC charging pile\*
  - Charge the vehicle using an AC charging pile in a public place, such as large supermarkets, shopping malls and parking lots.
  - Using a DENZA three-phase AC charging pile is also allowed. For how to use the charging equipment, refer to its user manual and follow the operating steps.
  - Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

### 2. Charging

- Unlock the vehicle and open the charge port door:
  - Open the charge port cap and the port door on the right side (see **P107**).
- Connect to the power supply terminal:
  - Skip this step if an AC charging box is used for charging.
  - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
  - Use mode 3 charging cable to connect your vehicle to the AC charging pile if no charging connector is provided.
- Connect to the vehicle port:
  - Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.
- Charging settings:
  - Skip this step if an single-phase AC charging box or a public AC charging

pile without any setting option is used.

- For public single-phase AC charging pile/box with settings, swipe the card or scan the QR code. See the user manual for charging pile/box details.
- The charging connection indicator  lights up on the instrument cluster.
- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
  - At this point, you can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See **P113** for the configuration process.

### 3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or charging is complete.
- Unplug the charging connector:
  - Disconnect as per the **P107**.
- Disconnect the power plug.
  - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
  - If mode 3 charging cable is used, it is recommended to unplug the charging connector from the vehicle first and then the plug from the charging point.
- Close the AC charge port door (see **P107**).
- Store the equipment properly.
  - If an AC charging pile/box is used, place the charging connector in its designated location.
  - Store the equipment properly.

## WARNING

- Never drop the equipment or move it by pulling it directly by the cable. Take caution when moving the equipment.

## Using DC Charging Piles (DC Charging Port)\*

### 1. Equipment


- Charge the vehicle using a public DC charging pile at a charging station.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

### 2. Charging

- To start DC charging, plug the charging connector of the DC charging piles into the DC charge port and lock it.
- Instant charging method:
  - Unlock the vehicle, then open the charge port door and cap on the right:



- Connect to the vehicle port
  - Plug the charging connector of the DC charging piles into the DC charge port and lock it.
- Operate the charging equipment according to the instructions to start charging.

- The charging connection indicator  lights up on the instrument cluster.
- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.

### 3. Stopping charging

- End charging:
  - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or the charging is complete.
- Unplug the charging connector:
  - Pull the charging connector after the vehicle is unlocked.
- After DC charging with a charging pile, organize the charging equipment and store the charging connector in the designated position properly.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door.

#### WARNING

- See "Charging Instructions" for charging safety warnings.

#### CAUTION

- If the connector cannot be pulled out after charging, contact




#### CAUTION





customer service of the charging pile in a timely manner.

- See "Charging Instructions" for specific charging precautions.
- In case of high-temperature DC charging, the battery thermal management performance may be affected by the A/C in the passenger compartment, and the charging performance may degrade, resulting in an extended charging time. To ensure charging efficiency, it is recommended to keep the A/C off during charging.




### Charge/Discharge Indicator

- The charging/discharging indicator shaped like the DENZA logo is located in the charge port door on the right side of the vehicle body. and it indicates the charging state in green, yellow, red, blue, and white respectively.
- If the charging/discharging connector is not connected, the indicator remains solid white for a period of time. If the vehicle is locked during use, the indicator is on for a period of time and then turn off. When the vehicle is unlocked, the indicator lights up again.

Function	Vehicle Status	Indicator Status	Color
Lighting	Charge port opened (no connector connected)	Solid white	
Charging	Charge/discharge initialization process	Flashing yellow	
	Charging being scheduled/charging paused	Solid yellow	

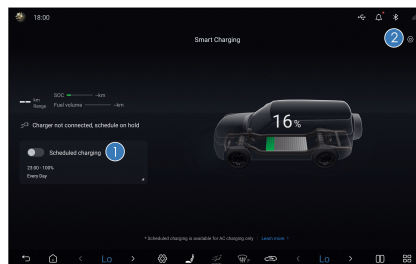
Function	Vehicle Status	Indicator Status	Color
Charging	Charging in progress	Flashing green	
	Charging complete	Solid green	
Discharging	Discharging in progress	Flashing blue	
Fault	Charge/Discharge fault	Solid red	

## Smart Charging

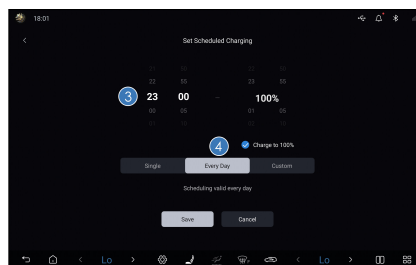
- You can access the setting screen either through the infotainment system or voice control:
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the Smart Charging app.
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap  → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging**.
  - Say "Hi BYD, start smart/scheduled charging", "Hi BYD, I want to make smart/scheduled charging" or "Hi BYD, please help me start smart/scheduled charging".
- You can exit the Smart Charging screen by tapping the Back  or Setting  button or calling the DENZA Assistant.
  - Say "Hi BYD, end smart charging/scheduled charging" or "Hi BYD, exit smart charging/scheduled charging" to quickly exit.

### Smart charging settings

- Scheduled charging switch
- Settings
- Charging start and end time
- Repeat cycle



- The factory default setting is to charge the vehicle immediately. That is, scheduled charging is disabled.
- To schedule a charging, toggle the scheduled charging ON ①, set the charging start time and end time ③ and repeat cycle ④, then save the settings.
- After the schedule is set up, if you connect the charging connector or press the power button to power off the vehicle, you will be reminded through the infotainment touchscreen of the charging start time. You can switch to instant charging if needed.





### CAUTION

- The smart charging function is developed for DENZA's slow AC charging equipment only. Please disable this function when using slow AC charging equipment that is not certified by DENZA. Otherwise, scheduled or immediate charging may fail due to no response from the equipment, resulting in low SOC or even low voltage of the high-voltage battery. If you need to use this function in a public charging facility, make sure it supports reservation from the charging pile.



### REMINDER

- The smart charging function is only dedicated for AC charging piles provided by DENZA. If you need to use this function via a public charging facility, please make sure that the facility supports vehicle-terminal reservation.
- In the event of low battery, the vehicle is charged to the minimum level before scheduled charging begins. In this process, the infotainment touchscreen still gives reminder messages for power-off and charging connector connection, and a related message is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The instant charging on PAD is effective only for current preset. To cancel all presets, please turn off the preset charging switch on the setting interface.
- The schedule setting is invalid for DC charging. Charging begins



### REMINDER

immediately after a DC charging connector\* is connected.

## Discharging Equipment

- This vehicle is equipped with external discharging feature. External discharging refers to vehicle-to-load (V2L) discharging.



### WARNING

- Do not touch any metal terminal of the discharging socket or the vehicle charge port during discharging.
- Stop discharging immediately if there are any abnormalities such as peculiar smell and smoke.
- See Charging Instructions for discharging safety warnings.
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When discharging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires to prevent it from falling and being rolled over by the vehicle and trampled on.
- Never use the equipment if the power strip cable becomes soft, the discharging connector cable is worn out, the insulation layer is cracked, or any other damage occurs.
- Never use the device when the discharging connector or power strip is disconnected or broken, or when there is any sign of surface damage.



## CAUTION

- For precautions concerning use of the discharge connection device, please refer to the precautions for charging equipment included in item 3 of "Charging Precautions".
- Before V2L discharging, ensure that the load is turned off.
- The engine starts when the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC. Do not discharge in a confined space or near combustible or explosive materials.



## REMINDER

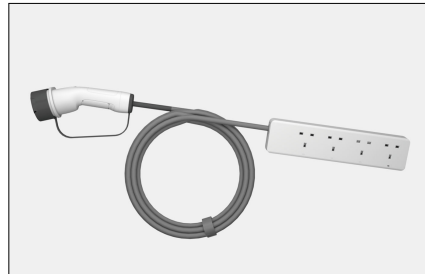
- The V2L function is recommended only when the vehicle SOC is high.
- When the vehicle is powered off, the static power consumption of the vehicle will increase if the V2L connection device is connected for an extended period without any output. Therefore, removing the discharging connector when the device is not used is recommended.

## V2L External Discharging

### 1. Equipment

- Vehicle-to-load (V2L) equipment: The device consists of a discharging connector, a power strip, a cable, and a discharge connector protective cover. (The picture on the left is for reference, and the specific modeling is subject to the real object)
- Discharging specifications: 250V/ (10A/13A/15A/16A)/50Hz. (Outlet standards vary by region; refer to the product manual for specifics.)
  - External discharging means discharge through a V2L device, with

a maximum discharge power of 2.5–4 kW. (Outlet standards vary by region; refer to the product manual for specifics.)

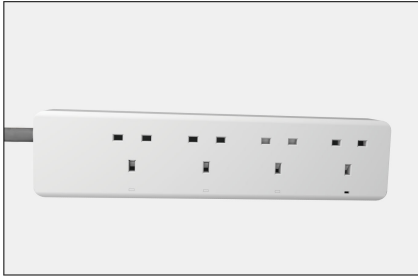


### 2. Discharging


- Before discharging, disarm the anti-theft alarm system.
- Unlock the charge port door, then open the port door and cap.
  - Unlock the charge port door, and then open the port door and cap on the right side of the vehicle (see **P107**).
- In any of the cases below, do not discharge. Otherwise, personal injuries may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
  - There are abnormalities of the V2L discharge connection equipment, such as cracked housing, worn cable, rusted plug, or foreign materials.
  - There is water or foreign material inside the charge port, or the metal terminals are damaged by rust, corrosion, and other abnormalities.
- Connect the discharge connection device:
  - Firmly connect the V2L discharging connector to the charge port.
- Start discharging:
  - After the switch button on the discharging socket is pressed, the

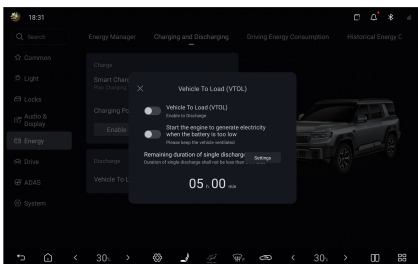
socket indicator becomes solid red, indicating that the socket can be used.

- After the device is connected, discharge begins and discharging information is displayed on the instrument cluster.



### 3. Setting discharging duration

- After the discharge connector is plugged in, V2L discharging will be automatically toggled on and a countdown to discharging will be displayed on the instrument cluster and infotainment touchscreen. The default duration of a discharge set on the infotainment touchscreen is five hours.
- Go to the central infotainment touchscreen →  → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** to access the "Vehicle To Load" setting screen. The function can be turned on or off by clicking the "External Discharge" switch. Connect the V2L discharge gun, and the discharge function can be turned on automatically.



- When the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC with the ignition off, tap the "Start the engine to generate electricity when the power is too low" switch if it is necessary to start the engine to continue discharging.

#### REMINDER

- If the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC with the ignition on, it will automatically start the engine to generate electricity, no setting required.
- Tap the Settings button for single discharge to set the desired discharge duration on the infotainment touchscreen.

#### CAUTION

- Discharging may stop in advance if the vehicle battery is too low, if battery is lower and no gasoline is available to generate electricity, or if the set discharging time is too long. This is a normal phenomenon.

### 4. Stopping discharging

- Disconnect the discharge connection device:
  - Press the button on the discharging connector and remove the connector from the charge port.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door (see **P107**).
- Organize the equipment:
  - Store the discharge equipment in the luggage storage box after discharging is complete.


## Target SOC Setting

- When the vehicle runs in dual-mode condition, the target SOC function is available to save battery power for operations such as rapid acceleration. When the vehicle runs stably, the battery SOC fluctuates around the target SOC.
- The vehicle controller will memorize the last set SOC balance value.

### ! REMINDER

- When the engine has been started and the vehicle is running at a stable speed, part of the torque produced by the engine will drive the generator to generate electricity and charge the high-voltage battery.
- If the difference between the current SOC and the SOC balance value is large, the balancing time may be longer

### Target SOC setting


- Target SOC refers to the battery level that you expect the vehicle to maintain during driving. To set this value, slide down the shortcut menu on the infotainment touchscreen or go to the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Energy** → **Energy Manager** → **SOC Settings** to enable SAVE mode.
- When the destination is convenient for vehicle charging, to make the best use of the electric driving power and reduce the fuel consumption, a lower target SOC is recommended.
- For a better driving and riding experience, the vehicle will automatically adjust the target SOC according to the altitude and ambient temperature.

- SAVE mode is related to the vehicle energy management priority:
  - SAVE: In the HEV mode, set the mandatory power protection to keep the priority power, and the SOC is as close as possible to the set value.

### ! CAUTION

- SAVE mode works in HEV mode only, so it does not respond if turned on in EV mode. For a better driving experience, it is better to switch to HEV mode before turning SAVE mode on.

### In-situ Recharge

- It is used to meet the target power demand by starting the engine to supplement power when the vehicle is in situ. When the user needs to store more electricity in situ to meet the subsequent long-term electricity demand, such as outdoor camping, rescue, or special terrain needs better power experience, the user can control the in-situ power supply and the target SOC of power supply through this function.
- Enabling the function
  - Enable this function by the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Energy** → **Energy Manager** → **In-situ Recharge**.
  - The vehicle is in the "OK" gear; the instrument displays the HEV mode; the vehicle is in Park; the set target SOC for power compensation is greater than current electric quantity; the function is enable to start.
- Function settings

- Users can select low-power or high-power modes for in-situ recharge according to their needs.
- Activating the function
  - The instrument displays "the vehicle is being recharged in situ, please keep the surrounding environment well ventilated".

### **WARNING**

- After the function is turned on, the engine will start and generate a certain amount of heat and exhaust gas. Please ensure that the vehicle is far away from flammable materials (withered grass, etc.) and in an open and well-ventilated environment to avoid potential safety hazards in the process of power supply.

### **CAUTION**

- In extreme cold, high temperature, plateau and other special environments, the in-situ recharge power may decrease. Please refer to the power displayed by the instrument in real time.
- A certain amount of fuel will be consumed in the process of in-situ recharge. Please use this function reasonably according to your expected mileage.

### **REMINDER**

- The function will exit when the vehicle is powered off, switched to the non-HEV mode, switched to the non-P gear, or the target SOC for power replenishment is lower than current electric quantity.

### **REMINDER**

- The function will automatically turn off when the target battery SOC is reached.

### **Mode Memory**

- When the vehicle SOC is high, the vehicle will automatically switch to EV mode when it is powered on. EV mode is recommended to be given priority to.
- When the vehicle SOC is moderate, the vehicle defaults to the previous dynamic mode when it is powered on. After power-on, you can manually select the mode with the mode switch.

### **Power Generation by Pressing the Accelerator Pedal**


- When the vehicle is in Park and HEV mode, if the SOC is lower than a certain value, pressing the accelerator pedal can generate electricity. Controlling the accelerator depth can generate electricity with different power.

### **REMINDER**

- It is recommended not to press the accelerator pedal for a long time to generate electricity.
- In special working conditions, such as low or high temperatures, the power of electricity generated by pressing the accelerator pedal is limited by the charging power or the motor generating capacity, and the power changes on the instrument cluster.


### **Regenerative Braking Settings**

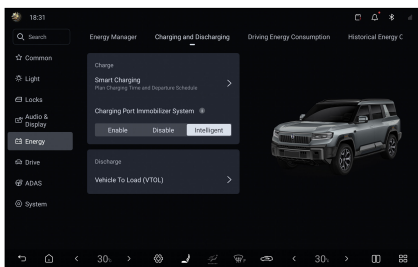
- There are two modes of energy feedback intensity: standard and

larger. Users can select the corresponding energy regeneration mode according to driving habits by going to the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Energy** → **Energy Manager**.

- The factory default target value is always maintained if not set by the user.
- It has the memory function, and the setting value will be defaulted every time after power-on.

## Charging Port Immobilizer System

In order to prevent the charging connector from being stolen, the vehicle charge port is anti-theft during charging and discharging. This function is disabled by default. Go to the central infotainment touchscreen →  → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** to enable the charging port immobilizer system.



- When the function is enabled or in the intelligent mode, you can unlock the vehicle and unplug the charging connector during charging in the following ways:
  - With the ignition off, press the unlock button on the smart key to unlock.
  - Press the microswitch next to the exterior handle of the driver's door to unlock.
  - Press the central unlock button on the driver's door to unlock.
- The charging connector unlocks automatically when the vehicle is fully charged (for "intelligent" mode only).

No.	Charge Port Immobilizer System Status	Door Anti-theft Lock Status	Vehicle Fully Charged or Not	Charging Connector Removable or Not
1	Enabled	Locking	/	No
2	Enabled	Start	/	Yes
3	Disabled	Locking	/	Yes
4	Disabled	Start	/	Yes

No.	Charge Port Immobilizer System Status	Door Anti-theft Lock Status	Vehicle Fully Charged or Not	Charging Connector Removable or Not
5	Intelligent	Locking	The vehicle is fully charged	Yes
			The vehicle is not fully charged	No
6	Intelligent	Start	/	Yes

### ! REMINDER

- The connector can be pulled out within 30 seconds after it is unlocked. Otherwise, the electric lock will lock again.
- After the locked vehicle is fully charged, the charging connector will be automatically unlocked when the immobilizer system of the charge port is disabled. When this system is enabled or in the intelligent mode, the charging connector must be manually unlocked following the above steps.
- Please close the charge port door after pulling out the charging connector.

## Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port

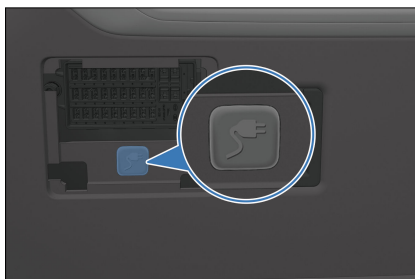
When charging connector cannot be unplugged due to failure of the immobilizer, unlock the charge port manually.

1. Opening the Trunk

2. Use the mechanical key to open the access door under the armrest on the right side of the trunk, and there is a cable buckle inside.



3. Unlock the charging connector by unlocking the emergency cable latch and pulling the emergency cable.



4. Reset the emergency cable latch and access cover after the unlocking is completed.

### ! REMINDER

- If any abnormality or failure of the function is found, contact



#### REMINDER

a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

## Batteries

### High-Voltage Battery

- One of the main power sources of the vehicle is high-voltage battery, which is located under the vehicle floor and can be charged repeatedly. The main ways to charge the high-voltage battery through an external power supply are: Using mode 2 charging cable, using AC charging piles, using DC charging piles\*, and using motor when the vehicle is braking, coasting, or the engine is on.



#### CAUTION

- As the high-voltage battery is arranged at the bottom of the vehicle, careful driving is recommended in case of bumpy roads.



#### REMINDER

- When the ignition is switched on, the high-voltage lines will be connected.
- For new cars with normal high-voltage battery status, the pure electric mileage will change due to different driving habits, road conditions, temperatures, and whether the electrical equipment is turned on or off.
- To prolong the battery life and ensure the battery safety, the vehicle switches to trickle



#### REMINDER

charging mode at high SOC, and the charging time may be prolonged.

- Due to the chemical characteristics of the battery itself, the battery capacity of vehicles that have been used for a period of time has natural degradation, and their pure electric mileage will reduce. It is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle checks. The store-side inspection can confirm whether the reduction of pure electric mileage is normal.

### High-Voltage Battery Maintenance

- To keep the battery at its best, charge it fully with a AC charging adapter on a regular basis (at least once a week).
- If the vehicle is to be left sit for over seven days, it is recommended to keep the SOC between 40% and 60% to extend vehicle service life. If this period will be over three months, charge the vehicle fully and discharge it down to 40% to 60% SOC, to avoid battery degradation or even damage.



#### WARNING

- Non-professionals must not open the high-voltage battery pack. Any organization or individual who illegally disassemble or dismantle the battery shall bear the responsibility for environmental pollution or accidents so caused.

### CAUTION

- When the high-voltage battery fails, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

### REMINDER

- The high-voltage battery works normally at temperatures between -35°C and 65°C.
- Higher or lower operating temperatures of the high-voltage battery may prolong the charging time.

## Recycling the High-Voltage Battery

How to scrap an NEV:

1. Take the vehicle to the DENZA service provider, and the after-sales service provider will help the recycling organization assess the residual value of the high-voltage battery.
2. Take the assessed vehicle to the recycling organization to disassemble the high-voltage battery.
3. Take the battery to the recycling service provider which will buy back the battery.

### WARNING

- New energy vehicle owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organization or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery, shall be liable for any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

## Low-Voltage Battery

- The low-voltage battery features the intelligent charging function. When the low-voltage battery is low, it may be charged by the high-voltage battery or the engine automatically to increase its battery life.

### REMINDER

- It is normal that intelligent charging with the ignition "OFF" produces a sound which is heard when the ignition is switched on.
- When leaving the vehicle, make sure all electrical equipment is turned off and the doors are closed.

## Waking up the Vehicle from Low SOC

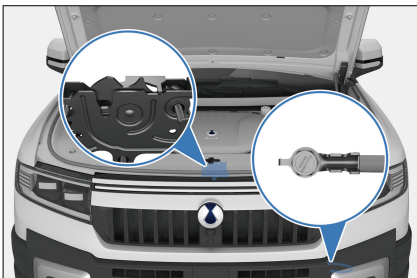
- **Wake-up by the driver's door microswitch**
  - The low-voltage battery features the dormant/wake-up function. The low-voltage battery may enter a dormant state after long-term parking. In that case, the vehicle cannot be located or unlocked with the smart key. At this time, press the microswitch on the driver's door handle (See **P65**) to activate the low-voltage battery. After the vehicle is unlocked, it can be used normally.
- **Wake-up by jump starting**
  - When the vehicle cannot be woken up and unlocked by the driver's door microswitch, use the mechanical key to open the door. Then, use a 12V power supply to start the vehicle by two specially designed cables for the jump start. In this case, the low-voltage battery SOC is low. The instrument cluster may display "The low-voltage battery SOC is low, and

the vehicle is going to be powered off", and the vehicle will become dormant again. Start the vehicle immediately and keep it started for over 15 minutes to ensure that the low-voltage battery is fully charged.

- The jump start can only be carried out through the special interface of the under-hood PDB, the positive electrode of the front compartment distribution box is as shown in the illustration.



- The negative electrode of the electric ignition is located under the front compartment lock catch and the front compartment trim cover, and the position is as shown in the illustration.



- If the vehicle cannot be woken up and started by the above operations, please contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

### WARNING

- Do not connect the vehicle with other vehicles for a jump start before it is powered on. Otherwise, the low-voltage battery may be damaged.
- If the low-voltage battery SOC is too low or the battery fails, jump starting may be required. Please carefully read and strictly follow the jump starting instructions in this manual.
- The low-voltage battery contains an intelligent control module. To prevent battery damage, do not disassemble or damage this battery, except in an emergency.
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery and the low-voltage maintenance switch connector before performing parts replacement and vehicle repairs.

### CAUTION

- It is recommended that the jump starting be done under the guidance of professionals, as the space for operating the under-hood PDB is limited and circuit-based risks are present.
- Do not clean the low-voltage battery with liquid to prevent ingress.

### Intelligent Charging

When the low-voltage battery power is low, the intelligent charging will be activated to prolong the use of low-voltage battery. When the power battery is low, the vehicle may start the engine to generate electricity to meet the needs of intelligent charging function. This

model is equipped with the intelligent charging function. It is not necessary to disconnect the low-voltage battery's negative terminal when the vehicle is to be parked for a long period.

**! CAUTION**

- When the low-voltage battery power is low, the intelligent charging will be activated, resulting in the decrease of high-voltage battery SOC or pure-electric driving range displayed on the instrument cluster, which is a normal phenomenon.
- After locking the vehicle, if the high-voltage battery charge level drops to the point of triggering the engine to generate power, it will consume a small amount of fuel and emit a little exhaust.

## Usage Precautions

### Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is hard to start or frequently stops turning, inspect the vehicle immediately.
- If the powertrain makes any abnormal sounds, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- If the powertrain has severe coolant and oil leakage, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- The powertrain needs break-in. This should preferably be done within the first 2,000 km in HEV-economic mode. Steady driving instead of high-speed

driving is recommended. The following practices effectively prolong vehicle service life:

- Avoid flooring the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
- Avoid speeding.
- Avoid emergency braking within the first 300 km.
- Do not maintain a high or low speed for too long.
- Do not use the vehicle to tow other vehicles within the first 2,000 km of mileage.
- The proportion of HEV mode (with the engine involved in working) must not be less than 50% of the driving mileage.

### Trailer Towing

- The vehicle can tow a trailer only when equipped with towing function.
- Do not make non-approved modifications. Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to install the towing kit and related software updates. DENZA does not assume any responsibility for injuries or damage caused by non-approved modifications.
- The towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. The total towing weight must not exceed the limits below:

Item	Parameter	Note
Maximum allowed towing capacity (braked)[kg]	2500	Maximum towing capacity when the trailer is braked

Item	Parameter	Note
Maximum towing capacity (unbraked)[kg]	750	Maximum towing capacity when the trailer is unbraked
Maximum vertical load (kg)	250	Maximum vertical load on ball joint

1. The maximum towing capacity equals the total trailer weight, which includes all cargo and additional equipment.
2. Maximum vertical load refers to the downward pressure exerted by the weight of the trailer on the trailer hitch when the vehicle and the trailer are stationary.

- To tow a trailer, adjust the tire pressure to accommodate additional loads. The air pressure of the front wheels remains unchanged at 280 kpa, and the air pressure of the rear wheels is adjusted to 320 kpa.
- Observe applicable local laws and regulations regarding towing. For driving safety, avoid speeding and overloading.
- Towing other vehicles will have an adverse impact on the vehicle, including maneuverability, performance, braking, endurance, economic driving or power consumption.
- BYD does not assume any responsibility for damage or injuries resulting from towing a trailer, or from failure to comply with the proper guidelines. Damage caused by towing a trailer is not covered by the warranty.
- For detailed towing instructions, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

## Driving Safety Precautions

### Drunk driving is strictly forbidden

Even a small amount of alcohol can reduce a driver's ability to respond to

traffic condition changes. The higher the level of alcohol, the less responsive the driver will be. Therefore, never drive while under the influence.

### Speed control

Speeding is a major cause of fatal accidents. Faster speeds generally entail higher risk. Therefore, maintain a speed safe for the road traffic conditions.

### Keeping the Vehicle Safe for Driving

Tire bursts and mechanical faults are extremely dangerous. To reduce the possibility of such faults, frequently check the vehicle's condition, and regularly complete the specified inspections.

#### WARNING

- Any driver must possess a driver's license before driving a vehicle.
- Do not drive when fatigued.
- Always follow the traffic regulations when driving a vehicle.
- During driving, please focus on driving, and avoid activity unrelated to driving (such as making / receiving phone calls and adjusting buttons).

## Vehicle Use Suggestions

Suggestions for prolonging the high-voltage battery usage:

- Before the vehicle is stored for a long time, it is recommended to charge the battery fully and discharge it down to 40% - 60% which is not too high or too low, and close the doors and windows.
- Before the vehicle is stored for a long time, it is recommended to fully charge and discharge it once every three months, and then charge it to 40% - 60% for storage.
- During operation of the vehicle, if the SOC indicator bar on the instrument cluster enters the red alert area, it indicates that the battery SOC is low. In this case, charge the vehicle in time and avoid driving with low SOC for a long time.
- During operation of the vehicle, it is recommended to use the on-board charging equipment to fully charge the vehicle once every one to two weeks.
- When the temperature is high, avoid long-term storage of vehicles at full power. It is recommended that the vehicle be discharged to below 95% after it is fully charged.
- When the temperature is very low or very high, it is recommended that the vehicle should not be parked outdoors for a long time.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid repeated rapid acceleration or deceleration whenever possible.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid driving the vehicle continuously for a long time; otherwise, the excessively high battery temperature will affect vehicle performance.
- Contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon

as possible in the event of the fault prompt.

- When the high-voltage battery temperature is high, the vehicle performance will be limited to some extent. In this case, stop the vehicle and wait until the temperature drops before operating.

### **WARNING**

- Compared with under normal temperatures, the pure-electric driving range is somewhat reduced and power performance will also be affected in low or high temperature environments.

### **CAUTION**

- If the battery meter drops to 0, the vehicle must be recharged. If it is not recharged within seven days, the battery may suffer permanent damage. Such damage is not covered by DENZA warranty terms.
- Driving range depends on many factors, such as the vehicle's available power, vehicle age (current battery life), weather, temperature, road conditions and driving habits.

## Fuel

### Fuel Selection

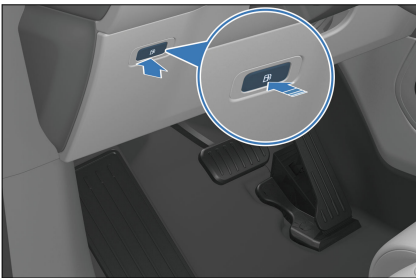
- The use of correct fuel is the basis for realizing the best performance of the engine, and also the key to controlling emissions and protecting relevant components.
- Please use unleaded gasoline that meets local standards.

### CAUTION

- Do not use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline leads to the failure of the three-way catalytic converter and the malfunction of the control device for exhaust pollution, as well as the increase in maintenance costs.
- The engine damage or excessive emission caused by the use of improper fuel is not covered by the warranty.
- The use of low-grade or inferior gasoline reduces the service life of the engine.

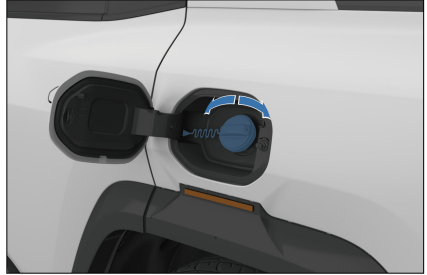
### Refueling

- The fuel door is located on the left side of the vehicle, so park the vehicle with its left side close to the fuel pump.
  - Turn the vehicle off.
1. Open the fuel door.
  - Press the refueling button. The instrument cluster prompts "Fuel tank pressure is being released. Please wait." It prompts "Fuel tank pressure released. Please add fuel." when the release is complete. Press the fuel door, and the door automatically opens to a certain angle.



2. Rotate the fuel tank cap counterclockwise to remove it.

- Due to the release of pressure in the fuel tank, you may hear a hissing sound.
- Connect the fuel tank cap to the fuel door panel with a cord to prevent inadvertent loss of the cap. While refueling, place the fuel tank cap on the bracket of the fuel door.




3. After refueling, screw up the fuel tank cap clockwise and then close the fuel door.


### WARNING

- Since the fuel is flammable and combustible, pay attention to the following matters during refueling:
  - It is recommended to add fuel outdoors.
  - Do not smoke during fuel filling, so as to prevent sparks or open flames, which are easy to cause combustion.
  - Fuel filling and charging must be done separately. Do not refuel the vehicle with the charging connector connected, which should be keep a safe distance away from combustible products, or it may result in risk of damaged equipment or injuries when the operation of plugging/unplugging the

 **WARNING**

charging connector is not done by rule.

 **CAUTION**

- Due to different pressures in the fuel tank, the time from the fuel tank pressure relief to the fuel door unlocking will be different, and it is normal to see different waiting time of fuel door unlocking.
- Stop filling after the filler nozzle is automatically cut off. Do not overfill the fuel tank, so as to leave some space for fuel expansion due to the temperature change.
- Check whether the fuel tank cap is tightened and whether the fuel door is closed in time after refueling.
- If the fuel tank cap is not tightened,  may light up on the instrument cluster.
- If the fuel adding is not completed within 15 minutes after the fuel door is opened, please close the door, open it, and add fuel again, otherwise the reverse spray of oil may occur during refueling.

## Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Saving fuel is simple and easy, and it helps prolong the vehicle's service life. Here are some tips for saving fuel and repair costs:
  - Constant speeds save fuel. Sudden acceleration, sharp turning, and

emergency braking consume more fuel.

- Speeds should be kept constant according to traffic conditions. Each deceleration or acceleration of the vehicle consumes additional fuel.
- Using cruise control under proper driving conditions for fuel saving.
- The use of the A/C brings additional load to the engine, resulting in larger fuel consumption. Turn off the A/C to reduce fuel consumption. When outside temperatures are moderate, use fresh air mode for ventilation.
- Make sure tire pressure is correct. Insufficient tire pressure causes tire wear and fuel waste.
- Do not load unnecessary weight on the vehicle. Excessive weight brings additional load to the engine, resulting in large fuel consumption.
- Do not stop to warm up the engine, and start driving slowly immediately after starting, which can make the engine reach the working temperature as soon as possible and reduce the emission of harmful substances. Unless in extreme low temperature environment, you can keep a high idle speed by lightly stepping on the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is in Neutral under "HEV-SPORT" mode, and then start driving slowly after warming up.
- When the engine is cold, do not run at a high speed or drive with the accelerator pedal pressed to a deep position immediately after starting. It is recommended to drive slowly after starting.
- Avoid long-term idling of the engine. If you are in a low-traffic area and have to wait for a long time, it is better to turn off the engine and start it later.

- Avoid engine deceleration or overspeed with loads. Select the appropriate speed gear according to the road conditions.
- Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Frequent stop and start cause fuel waste.
- Avoid unnecessary parking or braking. Maintain a stable speed and observe traffic lights to minimize the number of stops. When driving on the road without traffic lights, keep a proper driving distance from the vehicle ahead to avoid emergency braking, which may also reduce the brake wear.
- Do not drive on roads with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
- Keep moderate speeds in motorways. Higher vehicle speed consumes more fuel. Keep the vehicle speed within the economical range of speed to save fuel.
- Keep the front wheels properly aligned. Avoid collision with curbstones and drive slowly on rough roads. An inaccurate front wheel alignment causes excessive tire wear and increases the engine load and fuel consumption.
- Keep the chassis clean and free of mud. This reduces vehicle weight and prevents corrosion.
- Adjust the vehicle to keep it at its best working status. Such conditions as dirty air filters, much carbon deposit in spark plugs, dirty, deteriorated or viscous engine oil and lubricating oil, and unadjusted brakes worsen the engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance must be carried out to ensure a long service life of all components and reduce operating costs. If the vehicle is

often driven under severe conditions, the maintenance interval shall be shortened.

#### REMINDER

- Do not coast in Neutral gear.

## Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle has multiple storage spaces.
- Use the glove box, interior panel and backrest pockets to place small items. Large items are to be placed in the trunk.
- Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- Make sure the vehicle's total load (vehicle + passengers + luggage) remains within the specified maximum weight.
- Please read the following information carefully before carrying luggage.

#### WARNING

- Overloading and improper accommodation may affect stability and vehicle control, which may lead to accidents.
- Observe the maximum weight limit and other loading guidelines in this manual.
- Do not carry highly magnetic items, as they might interfere in the vehicle's normal operations.

## Carrying Luggage in the Passenger Area

- All items that could be thrown inwards and thus injure occupants in case of a collision must be properly placed and secured.
- Ensure that items placed on the floor behind the front seat do not roll under the seat, so as to avoid affecting the driver's ability to control the pedals or normal seat adjustment. Do not stack items to a height taller than the front seatbacks.
- Make sure the glove box is always closed while driving. If the glove box is open, the occupant's knees may be injured in case of a collision or an emergency stop.

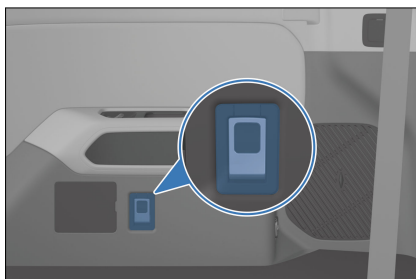
### **WARNING**

- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

## Carry luggage in the trunk

### Luggage anchors (4 pcs)

- Place luggage evenly in the trunk. Put heavier items at the bottom and as far in as possible.
- Secure items with ropes or straps so that they will not move while driving. Do not stack items to a height taller than seatbacks.



## Roof Rack

- Storing luggage on the roof rack will increase overall energy consumption and change the way the vehicle drives and handles.
- Do not open the sunroof with luggage on the roof rack, or you may risk damaging the sunroof and other components with the beam or the luggage.
- When installing the roof rack, please read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- Try to load the roof rack evenly and keep the center of gravity low. Loads on the roof rack elevate the overall center of gravity, which might alter your driving experience.
- When driving a heavily loaded vehicle, take extra precautions, drive slowly, and increase your following distance.
- The maximum recommended load of the roof rack is: Dynamic 75 kg, static 300 kg. Among them, the load includes the weight of the beam, luggage frame and other accessories mounted on the rack.

### **CAUTION**

- Luggage must not be put on the roof metal sheet directly. The roof metal sheet is not designed for loading.

**CAUTION**

- Use the roof rack properly and fasten the luggage on the beam.
- Make sure the luggage is securely fastened on the roof rack before driving and during parking.
- When using the roof side tent and other accessories, do not directly install them on the single side longitudinal beam of the luggage rack, please carry them on the crossbeam or luggage frame.

**Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning**

- The engine exhaust contains CO gas. If the vehicle is properly maintained, CO may not enter inside during normal driving.
- Check the exhaust system for leakage under the following conditions:
  - The exhaust sound is abnormal.
  - The vehicle has been in an accident that may damage the underside of the vehicle.

**WARNING**

- CO gas is toxic. Inhalation of CO can result in loss of consciousness and even threat to life. Any enclosed environment and activities that can cause CO poisoning should be avoided. Any enclosed environment and activities that can cause CO poisoning should be avoided.
- High-concentration carbon monoxide gas will quickly concentrate in closed areas, such as garages. Do not start the engine when the garage door is closed.

**WARNING**

Even if the garage door is open, the running time of the engine shall be limited to the time when the vehicle can be driven out of the garage.

- When the trunk is opened, airflow will bring the exhaust into the vehicle, creating a dangerous environment. If the vehicle must be started with the trunk open, all windows should be lowered and the interior air control system should be adjusted according to the following prompts:
  - Choose "fresh air mode" mode.
  - Select the "face/foot level" mode.
  - The fan speed is set at "high RPM".

**Fire Prevention**

**To prevent vehicle fires in a timely and effective manner, pay attention to the following during use of the vehicle:**

- Do not press the accelerator pedal continuously. Otherwise, the engine will always run at a high speed.
- No flammable or explosive items are allowed in the vehicle.
  - Temperatures may reach over 70°C in a vehicle exposed to direct sunlight in summer. Therefore, flammable and explosive items, such as lighters, cleaning agents and perfumes, stored in the vehicle can cause a fire or even explosion easily.
- Make sure cigarettes are thoroughly put out.
  - Smoking is harmful to your health and may cause a fire. Cigarettes that

not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.

- It is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for regular vehicle checks.
  - Check oil leakage in the engine compartment regularly, and clean up the oil dirt and oil stain on the engine in time.
  - Check vehicle wiring, electrical connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, and fixed positions regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not refit vehicle wiring or add any unauthorized electrical appliance.
  - The addition of extra electrical appliances, such as high-power audio systems, light fixtures, etc., may overload and overheat the wiring harness and increase the risk of fire. Improper refitting of electrical appliances or wiring may cause a fire due to contact resistance and abnormal heating.
  - Fuses or other replacement wires in excess of relevant electrical rating are strictly prohibited.
- Select a proper parking location.
  - When the vehicle is parked, especially in summer, do check whether there are any flammables such as dry grasses, dead woods, leaves or wheat straws under the vehicle. If any, a fire may be caused as the temperature of the exhaust system components rises after a long-term drive.
  - When the vehicle is running, avoid driving on the road sections piled up with flammables such as dry leaves, wheat straws and grasses, or immediately stop the vehicle to check whether any flammables are carried along after passing such road

sections. When parking the vehicle, try to avoid sun exposure.

- When the vehicle is being repaired or maintained, it is necessary to disconnect the negative line of the battery and the low-voltage maintenance switch connector (for the installation position of the low-voltage maintenance switch connector, refer to the guiding signs for emergency rescue personnel pasted in the front compartment).
- Keep a lightweight fire extinguisher in the vehicle and know how to use it.
  - In order to ensure vehicle safety, a fire extinguisher should be equipped in the vehicle, and be checked and replaced regularly. Also, you should familiarize yourself with use of the fire extinguisher and be prepared for any accidents.
- In the event of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimize any losses.
  - Fires typically show initial warning signs, such as abnormal noises and odors in the vehicle body. When abnormal conditions are found, turn off and stop the vehicle immediately. Try to put out the fire if possible.
  - Call a local fire emergency number. Then contact a DENZ authorized dealer or service provider and your insurance provider.
- Find out the origin of the fire. In case of any smoke in the engine compartment, do not open the hood immediately (because this aggravates the combustion and spread of the fire due to air ingress. There is limited comburent in the engine compartment, so the hood shall be kept closed to control the flames, which is conducive to firefighting). Point the on-board fire extinguisher at the ignition point from the hood gap to

put the fire out, or seek help from the passing cars. If you can borrow more fire extinguishers, open the hood to put it out when you cannot see any flame from outside

- If the fire brigade is involved, ask for a duty performance certificate and a description of fire cause.
- After occurrence of the accident, contact the insurance company for post-event handling in a timely manner.



#### REMINDER

- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of fire loss insurance is recommended.

## Snow Chains

- Snow chains are only for emergencies or areas where they are permitted by laws, which are primarily designed to meet the situational needs of vehicles on rainy, icy and snowy roads in winter.
- This mode is only available in the snow and mud mode interface. When the vehicle is optimized for traction output, the adaptive cruise system, automatic parking system and tire pressure monitoring system will not work properly.
- Snow chains should be installed on rear wheels. Be careful when driving the vehicle installed with snow chains on snow-covered roads. Use thin snow chains. Some snow chains may damage tires, wheels, and the vehicle body. The recommended snow chains are no larger than 10 mm in thickness or diameter, which provides enough space between tires and other parts in the hubcap.



#### CAUTION

- When using snow chains, driving speed must not exceed 40 km/h or the speed limit specified by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Drive carefully, and pay attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents.
- Install the chains symmetrically and remove them immediately after driving on snowy or muddy roads.
- If an abnormal sound is heard from the snow chain, please stop the vehicle immediately to check whether the vehicle components such as suspension, body or brake lines are normal, and ensure that there is no contact between them and the snow chains.
- When installing the snow chain, park the vehicle on a flat surface away from traffic, turn on the hazard warning lights, and place a

## CAUTION

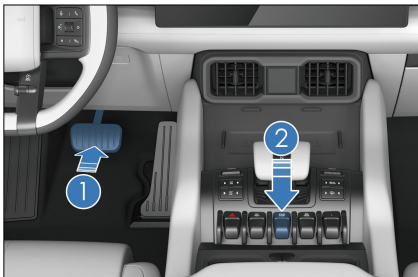
warning triangle at the rear of the vehicle.

- Install snow chains after turning off the vehicle and engaging the parking brake firmly. Do not install snow chains when the tire pressure is insufficient
- Do not install snow chains when the tire pressure is insufficient
- When using snow chains, be careful not to damage the aluminum rims.

# Starting and Driving

## Starting the Vehicle

- Carry the valid smart key with you.
- Press the START/STOP button ② while pressing the brake pedal ①.
- The vehicle is ready to drive when the OK indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

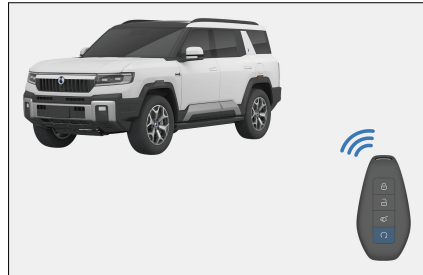


## REMINDER


- Do not touch the START/STOP button while driving.

### Remote Start

- Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for two seconds to start the vehicle. After it is started, turn signals flash three times.
- Press and hold the START/STOP button on the smart key. The vehicle powers off, and turn signals flash twice.



### Auto Power On/Off

- Enable or disable smart power-on/power-off by the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**. This function is disabled by factory default.
- When auto power on is enabled, power on the vehicle in the following two methods:
  - Method 1: Unlock with a valid smart key, microswitch, NFC key, or BYD App, and then open the driver's door for the first time.
  - Method 2: Carry a valid smart key, NFC key, or use BYD App, and press the brake pedal. The vehicle is ready to drive.

- When auto power off is enabled, power off the vehicle in the following two methods:
  - Method 1: Press the START/STOP button.
  - Method 2: Shift to Park, and lock from the outside with a valid smart key, microswitch, or NFC key.

### REMINDER

- Auto power on is operational only when the driver's door is opened for the first time after unlocking.
- If you unlock and access the vehicle by opening a door other than the driver's door, after you powering on and then off, opening the driver's door does not power on the vehicle.
- When auto power on is disabled, the brake pedal and the START/STOP button must be pressed to power on the vehicle.
- Auto power on is not operational when the hood is open.
- To prevent false triggering, using BYD App can only lock but not power off the vehicle.
- In the case of auto power on by opening the driver's door, locking from the outside with a valid smart key, microswitch, or NFC key automatically powers off the vehicle. There is no need to press the START/STOP button.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the instrument cluster and infotainment system lighting need a certain time for self-check, wait patiently for a few seconds until the instrument cluster displays normally and then use the vehicle.

## Driving

- During driving, energy is recovered by the regenerative brake when the vehicle decelerates. For higher efficiency, do not accelerate or decelerate the vehicle unnecessarily.
- The regenerative braking intensity can be set on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - **Standard:** When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers energy in the standard level, and the vehicle deceleration is in the standard level.
  - **High:** When the accelerator pedal is released, the motor controller recovers more energy, and the vehicle deceleration is high.
- You can select the regeneration intensity based on the deceleration sense when releasing the accelerator pedal. Different deceleration senses deliver different driving experiences.
- The set regenerative braking intensity will be memorized. When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the regenerative braking mode set last time will be maintained.

### REMINDER

- Do not setting the regenerative braking intensity while driving at a high speed. This may distract your attention and cause accidents.
- In HEV mode, the engine automatically starts and stops as needed to charge the battery or provide additional power. In some conditions, the engine may start, or stop if it has started.
- Vehicle power is lower at low battery SOC than that at high battery SOC.

## Safety Check before Driving

It is advisable to carry out a safety check before driving long distance, which ensures your driving safety and enhances your driving experience. The vehicle can also be driven to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

### Exterior

- Tires: Check tire pressure and carefully inspect tires for any cut, damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear.
- Lug nuts: Ensure all nuts are fitted and tightened.
- Leaks: Check for fluid deposits beneath it. These may indicate a leak of fuel, engine oil, coolant or other liquids. (It is, however, normal for a small pool of water to form, caused by the air conditioning system.)
- Lighting: Make sure headlights, position lights, turn signals and all other lights are working normally. Check headlight intensity.

### Interior

- Seat belts: Check whether seat belts can be properly fastened. Verify that seat belts are not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: Particularly, verify that maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting, and defroster work properly.
- Brake pedal: Verify that there is enough space for the brake pedal to work.
- Low-voltage battery and cables: Check connectors for any corrosion or looseness and check any cracks in the low-voltage battery housing.

### In the engine compartment

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Verify that coolant level is correct.
- Fuel pipe: Check the pipe for any fuel leakage and loose connections.

### Check after starting

- Exhaust system: Check the exhaust system for leakage. In case any anomaly is found, have it repaired.
- Engine oil level: After the engine is warmed up, stop it for 10 minutes, park the vehicle on the flat ground, and check the oil level.
- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and the speedometer work normally.
- Brakes: In a safe area, drive the vehicle straight, hold the steering wheel tightly, decelerate and apply the brake. Verify that the vehicle maintains a straight direction.
- Other abnormalities: Check for loose parts, leaks, and unusual noises.

If everything is OK, just enjoy your driving.

### Preparations Before Driving

- Check the surroundings before getting into the vehicle.
- Adjust seat position, seatback angle, cushion height, headrest height, and the steering wheel angle and height.
- Adjust the rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Close all doors.
- Fasten the seat belts.

### Kick-Down Function\*

- While driving, when the vehicle is climbing a hill or needs to accelerate quickly, press the accelerator pedal to near its end. As the pedal resistance increases, the Kick-Down function is triggered, causing the engine RPM to rise and providing greater power to the vehicle.
- The higher the battery charge, the more powerful the battery discharge, and the engine will operate normally, providing a better acceleration experience.
- Faults of the battery, generator or engine affect Kick-Down power output.
- Frequent triggering of the Kick-Down function will cause the battery level of the vehicle to drop rapidly.

## Driving Mode

### Off-road Mode

Off-road mode includes snow, sand, mud, mountain and rock modes, and there are three ways to switch:

1. Driving mode App: Enter the driving mode App to switch the corresponding off-road mode through the "driving mode" button on the infotainment touchscreen interface.
2. Off-road scroll button: Switch off-roads using the off-road scroll button on the steering wheel.
3. Voice control: "Hi, BYD, enter the XX mode."

### Snow mode

- Snow mode is recommended for roads with a firm roadbed and a layer of loose and slippery materials such as grass, snow, ice, or gravel. The vehicle improves the four-wheel

grip by optimizing its towing, driving, and manipulation features in slippery conditions.

### WARNING

- If the engine is in working condition and there is snow around, it is easy for vehicle exhaust to invade the vehicle, resulting in carbon monoxide poisoning, causing serious personal injury or even death.
- Always drive at a safe speed.
- Do not park on very steep slopes.
- Do not enable the L function on paved surfaces.

### REMINDER

- The adhesion coefficient of snow-covered roads is low, so drive with caution and slow down for corners.
- Do not park on very steep slopes unless necessary.
- In deep snow (snow depth  $\geq$  200mm), it is recommended to enable the L function.


### Sand mode

- Sand mode is recommended for roads that are soft, dry, or easily pressed by wheels (e.g., sand and deep snow). The vehicle optimizes the driving force and saves battery power for better running on the sand.
- Sand ABS is only applicable to the soft road surface of sand type. Compared with ordinary ABS, the wheel locking time is longer and the braking distance is shortened during emergency braking.


- The user can enable or disable sand ABS by the infotainment touchscreen → Driving mode App → Sand mode.
- Sand ABS is off by factory default and does not have a memory function.
- After the switch is turned on, if it needs to be turned off, please click the switch button again or exit the sand mode.

 **WARNING**

- Never drive on paved roads in this mode.
- It is forbidden to turn on sand ABS on paved roads.

 **CAUTION**

- For desert driving, it is recommended to adjust the tire pressure to 120 kpa (1.2 bar).
- In sand mode, the vehicle automatically sets a higher target SOC. Make sure the vehicle is fully charged before a high-intensity off-road trip.
- When parking on a slope, adjust the front of the vehicle to face downhill to reduce the possibility of rollover.
- When driving on sand, keep as many wheels as possible running on the firmest surface.
- After driving over sandy roads, check the braking system and ensure that it is normal. Clean the debris such as sand and dirt at the bottom of the vehicle to prevent vehicle failure.
- After each desert off-road trip, it is recommended to check the following parts in time and

 **CAUTION**

maintain the vehicle or send it for repair as needed:


- Engine oil filter element
- Air conditioning filter
- Electric fan
- Tires
- Light Switches
- Brake pedal, brake pad, and brake disc
- Charge port door and fuel door
- Electric Pedal\*
- Air filter element
- Door hinges
- Locks, latches, and interior buttons
- Supercharger pressure end lines and impellers
- Radiator Assembly

**Mud mode**

- Mud mode is recommended for roads that are muddy, deeply rutted, soft and uneven, or where the vehicle is prone to skidding and getting stuck. The vehicle optimizes the driving force output and the ESC parameters for better passing through these roads.

 **WARNING**

- Never drive on paved roads in this mode.
- Do not park on very steep slopes.

 **CAUTION**

- Drive at a constant speed and avoid stopping midway in the mud.
- Before driving through the mud pit, please get off and check the depth of the mud pit, whether there are hidden obstacles, etc.
- Be sure to keep a sufficient safe distance from the vehicles ahead because the vehicle braking distance increases when driving on wet or muddy roads.
- When driving on mud, be careful of sudden changes in speed or direction.
- Clean your vehicle after driving through the mud. Otherwise, the excessive mud in the vehicle will lead to vehicle imbalance, causing damage.

**Mountain mode**

- Mountain mode is recommended for roads with mixed soil and stones or potholes, such as rugged mountain roads, hills, gravel roads, etc. The vehicle improves the off-road driving safety by intelligently adjusting the driving force output.

 **WARNING**

- Never drive on paved roads in this mode.
- Drive uphill and downhill in a straight line to prevent lateral skidding and rollover.
- Do not park on very steep slopes.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal too deeply may cause tires to slip,

 **WARNING**


spin, or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

**Rock mode**

- Rock mode is suitable for the road surface piled with stones or the road condition with large drop between stones. The vehicle automatically locks the rear differential lock of the vehicle configuration, and intelligently adjusts the torque distribution ratio and body stability control system parameters in real time according to the terrain changes, so as to ensure the safety and trafficability of off-road driving.

 **WARNING**

- Never drive on paved roads in this mode.
- Please be sure to keep a sufficient safe distance from the vehicle in front to minimize vehicle damage and personal risk.
- When crossing the rocky road, it may cause the vehicle to turn sharply. Please control the steering wheel carefully.
- Please place your thumb on the outer ring of the steering wheel and keep it facing up to avoid hand injury during severe turbulence.

 **CAUTION**

- Activate this mode when the vehicle is stationary.
- Please drive carefully and slowly through rocky terrain at low speed.

## CAUTION

- Please place your thumb on the outer ring of the steering wheel and keep it facing up to avoid hand injury during severe turbulence.

## Intelligent mode

- Intelligent mode has certain terrain recognition and off-road capability, and the vehicle will intelligently adjust torque distribution and limited slip control according to the road characteristics. If you want a professional off-road experience, please switch to the corresponding terrain mode.
- How to use
  - Enter the intelligent mode through the infotainment touchscreen driving mode App or click the steering wheel intelligent mode button.



## L Function


- The L function can be used in scenarios such as off-road driving, getting out of trouble, climbing steep slopes, and traction rescue. Under the L function, the vehicle will increase the low-speed torque output, accompanied by the increase of energy consumption, noise and tire wear.
- How to use

- Press the L button to enter or exit the L function. When the L function is switched on, the L status is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Perform a L function switch only when:
  - Vehicle speed is still.
  - The rear wheels are not slipping.
  - The differential lock has been locked or unlocked.

## WARNING

- Do not enter and exit the L function frequently.
- Do not switch to L function on paved roads.

## Creep mode

- Creeping mode is applicable to gravel road, uneven road, boulder road, cross axle and extrication conditions. When this function is turned on, you do not need to step on the accelerator pedal or brake pedal, and the vehicle will automatically maintain a low speed and run at a constant speed according to the set speed. It is recommended to use this function in off-road conditions or when needing to get unstuck. The gear range of creep speed is from gear 1 to 12.
- Function on and off:
  - Press the creep switch on the infotainment touchscreen to open or close the creep mode.
  - After the creep mode is turned on, engage the D gear to activate the creep mode, and the instrument indicator  lights up.
  - If the indicator light is white, it indicates that the function is on and the creeping function is in the standby state.

- Creep speed gear setting:
  - Acceleration: Move the left rocker switch of the steering wheel upward

- Deceleration: Move the left rocker switch of the steering wheel downward

Recommended target speed gear

Creep speed gear	Road conditions
Gear 1-3	Rock terrain, cross-axle terrain
Gear 4-6	Cross-axle terrain, macadam-like terrain (downhill)
Gear 7-9	Snow terrain, macadam-like terrain (flat or uphill)
Gear 10-12	Grass, sand, muddy terrains

- Creep override drive:
  - When the driver depresses the accelerator pedal while the creep mode is active, the creep mode is temporarily disabled. When the vehicle speed exceeds 55km/h, the function will automatically exit.

 **WARNING**

- The creep mode can assist the driver, but it cannot replace the driver to drive. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times to ensure vehicle safety.
- In some bad road conditions, such as steep slopes, extreme ice and snow roads, the creeping function may not be able to maintain low-speed driving, and drivers must be vigilant at all times to avoid accidents.

**Precautions for off-road driving**

**Inspection items before off-road driving**

- Check the engine oil and add sufficient oil if necessary. Ensure that the engine runs steadily on steep slopes.

- Check the tread depth and tire pressure, remove the foreign matter stuck on the tread (such as small stones), and carry the intact spare tire.
- Check whether the chassis, body and electrical appliances are damaged.
- Check whether the suspension system can rise and fall normally\*.
- Check that all vehicle lights are working properly.
- Check to ensure all tools needed are present and in good condition.
- Check the amount of fuel and the amount of electricity.
- Before starting off-road driving, consult all relevant government agencies to determine where you can legally drive your vehicle and what licenses or registrations are required.
- Improve the off-road driving experience by familiarizing yourself with the vehicle's dimensions, including approach angle, departure angle, longitudinal breakover angle, ground clearance, and vehicle features.
- Fix all articles in the vehicle firmly to prevent danger caused by movement and falling of articles during driving.

- Be familiar with the terrain, area and road conditions. Different road surfaces such as hard soil, gravel, rock, grass, sand, mud, rain, snow and ice have different effects on the steering, control and traction of vehicles.
- Driving in a dusty environment or on sand may seriously affect the air cleaner element. Take at least one spare part.
- Fully investigate the road conditions, formulate driving routes and drive cautiously.
- Ensure you are in good physical condition and have thoroughly assessed your off-road capabilities before embarking on any off-road activities. Avoid sharp turns and sudden steering at high speeds. Incorrect driving may cause the vehicle to lose control or roll over, causing serious casualties.
- Assess terrain conditions and engage the corresponding off-road mode before entering complex terrain to avoid the vehicle losing control.

### Inspection items after off-road driving

Off-road driving impose stricter performance requirements on vehicles compared to driving on regular roads. Check the vehicle after off-road driving in order to detect damage immediately and reduce the risk of accidents for yourself and other road users.

- Disengage the differential lock.
- Check whether the steering system is abnormal (heavy steering or abnormal noise).
- Clean headlights and tail lights and inspect for damage.
- Clean front and rear license plates.
- Check the horn.

- Check whether there is oil leakage or liquid leakage at the bottom of the vehicle.
- Clean wheels, tires, wheelhouses, and underbody and inspect for any foreign material and damage.
- Check the air filter and relevant pipelines for water and sand ingress.
- Check for loose threaded fasteners.
- Check the exhaust system for trapped plant twigs or other flammable materials, as these items can increase the risk of a fire.
- Ensure that the area around the air intake and the front grille are clean and free of residual dirt. Pay special attention to the lower grille and radiator components. Neglect of this may cause the engine to overheat, resulting in serious engine damage.
- Check whether there is mud and sand in the front cabin and some shrubs through sand, mud, bushes, etc. Check whether there is sand and mud gathered around the brake, which will affect the braking effect and damage the brake system components. After cleaning the vehicle, please clean vehicle as soon as possible and check it in detail. If there is any abnormality, please contact the authorized service shop of DENZA Automobile as soon as possible.

### WARNING

- The following precautions must be observed when driving off-road to minimize personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- In a rollover accident, an unbelted passenger has a greater chance of death than a belted passenger. Make sure all

 **WARNING**

- occupants have their seat belts properly fastened when driving,
- When entering the off-road scene, it is recommended to wear walkie-talkies and other communication equipment.
  - Ensure you are in good physical condition and have thoroughly assessed your off-road capabilities before embarking on any off-road activities.
  - Avoid sharp turns and sudden steering at high speeds. Incorrect driving may cause the vehicle to lose control or roll over, causing serious casualties.
  - When there is a strong crosswind, slow down and reduce the speed to better control the vehicle.
  - When driving in the field or on rough roads, do not drive at high speed, jump, turn sharply, hit objects, etc., otherwise it may cause the vehicle to lose control or roll over, seriously damage the vehicle, or even cause serious casualties.
  - When driving off-road, maintain extreme caution and avoid driving in hazardous areas.
  - Do not hold the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. Severe jolts may cause your hands to jerk against the steering wheel, resulting in injuries to hands. Place your hands, especially your thumbs, on the outer ring of the steering wheel and try to hold the steering wheel with both hands.

 **WARNING**

- Do not enter areas where traffic is prohibited.
- In unfamiliar areas, drive at low speed to be aware of any obstacles you may encounter.
- If the low oil pressure warning light comes on while the vehicle is in motion, stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Check the engine oil level and do not ignore the warning from the low oil pressure warning light. Continuing to drive in this condition may result in engine damage.
- Off-road driving increases the likelihood of vehicle damage, which may result in assembly or system failure. The driving style should be adjusted according to the terrain conditions.
- Incorrect use of driving modes can cause the vehicle to respond incorrectly to road conditions, reducing the life of the suspension and driveline.

 **CAUTION**

- Before switching to the off-road mode, it is necessary to ensure that the seat belt is buckled. If the seat belt is not fastened, the alarm of the infotainment touchscreen will be triggered.
- The braking effect must be checked immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow. Do not enter the sand after driving in the mud, so as to avoid damaging the transmission or brake after getting wet in the mud.

## Wading mode

### Introduction to wading mode

- The wading mode is suitable for roads with water, and the maximum wading depth is 850 mm (the maximum wading depth of the cloud version is 890 mm). By taking over the engine in time, controlling the sound in the wet area and limiting the discharge inside and outside the vehicle, the vehicle can improve its wading trafficability and safety.

### How to Use

- Mode activated
  - OK indicator is on.
  - Tap the infotainment touchscreen → driving mode App → Wading mode or wake up by voice "Hi, BYD, enter the wading mode" to enter the driving mode App, click the wading mode, read and agree to the pop-up instructions and risk tips, and then click "Agree" to enter.
- Mode exit
  - Toggle the mode scroll button on the steering wheel or the off-road scroll button to switch to another mode to exit.
  - Click the exit button on the center console.

### WARNING

- It is not recommended to wade into water unless necessary.
- Be sure to turn on the wading mode before entering the wading area, and do not exit the wading mode and power on and off the vehicle in the wading area.

### WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum allowable wading depth indicated by the vehicle.
- Do not drive or stop in the deep water area for a long time.
- Avoid driving in turbulent water. Always drive slowly with a speed below 15 km/h, and do not accelerate or rush into the wading area.
- The wading mode can not monitor the actual water condition and water flow speed around the vehicle or predict whether the water depth around the vehicle rises rapidly, can not identify the waterproof sealing of the current vehicle, and can not predict whether it is safe to continue driving.
- The function of wading detection is only an auxiliary tool, which can not replace the driver's judgment of the external situation. In any case, the driver is responsible for driving safety. Beware of the surroundings and drive with caution when wading.
- Before wading, the driver should assess whether the function using conditions are met. Pay attention to surroundings to identify potential hazards when using this function to wade, so as to avoid vehicle damage and personal injury.
- Before wading, the driver needs to confirm the wading area conditions. Do not attempt to wade if the water depth cannot be confirmed. Taking a detour is recommended.

**! WARNING**

- Wading mode is not suitable for all working conditions and environments, and can not guarantee the safe driving of vehicles in complex driving conditions such as floods, deep water, rivers and rainstorms.
- Avoid wading into deep water areas, as driving beyond the maximum allowable wading depth may cause vehicle damage or even personal injury.
- During wading, if it is found that water enters the engine intake pipe or the engine fails, do not switch driving modes or power off and on the vehicle, otherwise it may be damaged.
- Only wade in fresh water.

**! CAUTION**

- Ensure the SOC is above 20% before use, and pay close attention to the remaining battery of the vehicle.
- Please confirm that the door is closed and the rearview mirror is unfolded before use.
- The wading mode cannot work when the vehicle activates adaptive cruise control (ACC), automatic parking (APA)\* and automatic emergency braking (AEB).
- Entering the wading mode will force the wet-zone sound to be turned off. After exiting the wading mode for a period of time, the wet-zone sound control will be restored.

**! CAUTION**

- The maximum static wading capacity refers to the depth at which the vehicle slowly passes through the still water. A lower value should be considered in flowing water.
- In the process of wading, pay attention to the water waves caused by the vehicle in front, which may cause the wading depth to exceed the maximum allowable value.
- The Disus maximum water level of the wading mode interface is dynamically displayed according to the suspension adjustment.
- It is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for checks after wading.

**Vehicle inspection and servicing**

- After the vehicle has waded across the water, it is recommended to carry out the following checks immediately:
  - Check whether there is abnormal water ingress.
  - Check whether there are abnormal instrument warnings.
  - Check horn sound.
  - Check front combination lights, rear combination lights and turn signals.
  - Check the brake disc for abnormal sound.

**Sport+ mode****Sport+ mode**

- It is suitable for professional tracks or test sections. Do not use this mode on public roads or low-adhesion roads

such as mountains, rocks, rain, snow and wading. This mode has catapult start conditions, which can increase the output power to peak power in a short time, bringing you the ultimate acceleration experience.

### How to use the ejection start function

- Switch to sport+ mode through infotainment touchscreen driving mode App or intelligent voice assistant. When the shift lever is in D gear, step on the accelerator and brake deeply at the same time. When the instrument cluster displays "ejection start function is activated", release the brake pedal within 3 seconds.

#### WARNING

- Be sure to drive carefully in accordance with local laws and regulations.
- Please pay attention to road safety and surrounding personnel.
- Do not use this function on wet and slippery roads, so as to avoid losing control of the vehicle, causing serious accidental injury or even endangering life.

#### CAUTION

- Activate this mode when the vehicle is stationary.
- Please ensure that the surrounding environment is open, the field of vision is wide, and the road is closed and paved.
- Please ensure that the initial charge is higher than 50%.
- The time interval between successful activation of each ejection start is 180 seconds.

#### CAUTION

- Racing mode disables or limits some vehicle functions, including some auxiliary driving functions.
- Before and after using racing mode, please check the status of power battery, engine, brake, tire pressure and other systems in time.

### Custom Mode

#### Custom mode introduction

- The custom mode provides experienced off-road users with a range of customizable parameter sets. Users can customize the mode according to terrain conditions and personal driving habits (e.g., adjusting power delivery, steering assist settings, and energy regeneration levels), thereby optimizing the off-road driving experience.

#### How to Use

- Switch to custom mode through driving mode App on the infotainment touchscreen or intelligent voice assistant.

#### CAUTION

- To ensure driving safety and optimize the off-road experience, users must fully understand the meanings of all setting parameters and their impact on vehicle performance before use.
- When selecting different configurations, consider the actual using scenarios, such as: It is recommended to set the cooling mode to a higher level during intense off-road driving.



## CAUTION

- If customized configurations are incompatible, switch to the special terrain mode or reset to factory default settings.

## U-turn

### U-turn introduction

- U-turn function is suitable for outdoor off-road vehicles that need to turn or U-turn on narrow roads. Ordinary normal steering can not complete U-turn or steering on narrow roads because of the large turning diameter. U-turn function can significantly reduce the turning diameter and improve the maneuverability of vehicles in narrow spaces.

### Enabling the function

- Activate the turning around function by the infotainment touchscreen → Driving mode App → U-turn or by the intelligent voice.

### Function access

- A feature information popup window will appear when the user chooses the U-turn on the infotainment touchscreen for the first time. Please carefully read the feature information and confirm.
- After entering the function, the system will judge whether the opening conditions are met. If not, the system will give a pop-up prompt. Please follow the prompt. After meeting the conditions, you can enter the U-turn user interaction interface.
- If the pop-up window prompts "the system status is not satisfied", indicating that the vehicle is faulty, please go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to check the vehicle problem.

## User interaction interface

- Terrain selection: Different terrain modes are provided on the interface for the driver to select. The driver is requested to select the appropriate mode according to the road surface recommended on the interface.
- Text guide: The driver can adjust the position of the vehicle by driving normally at low speed, and the interface will give text to guide the driver to activate the U-turn function correctly.
  - Prompt "The slope is too large, please drive the vehicle to the flat ground", indicating that there is a certain slope on the current road surface, and the vehicle needs to be moved to a relatively flat road surface.
  - Prompt "System cooling", wait for the system cooling to be completed before continuing to use the function.

### Function activation and exit

- The driver can directly click "Start" to activate the U-turn function, or slide the car model in the image, select the specified angle and click "Start" to activate the function.
- After clicking "Start", according to the guidance of the pop-up window, turn the steering wheel to the limit position and maintain, engage D gear, release the brake, the function can be activated, and the vehicle starts to rotate.
- If the angle is not selected, the vehicle can continue to turn, the driver can press the brake pedal to stop the function, or click "stop" to end the U-turn, and press the accelerator pedal during the turn to increase the speed of the vehicle.


- If the designated angle rotation is selected, the vehicle will stop smoothly and engage P gear after rotating to the designated angle. During the rotation, the driver can stop the rotation in advance by stepping on the brake pedal or clicking "stop".
- When the U-turn is activated, the central control screen will display the reference track information of the vehicle rotation effect. The actual track is affected by the distortion of the ground and panoramic image and the camera blind area. The driver should always pay attention to the vehicle status and the surrounding conditions of the vehicle to ensure that he can take over the vehicle control in time.

 **WARNING**

- When using this function, please ensure that there are no obstacles or pedestrians within a safe distance.
- U-turn is only an auxiliary function, which cannot replace the driver's manual driving operation. Please monitor the vehicle status and the surrounding conditions of the vehicle at all times to ensure that you can take over the control of the vehicle in time.
- Please ensure that all passengers in the vehicle are wearing seat belts and are in good physical condition, and the driver meets the driving requirements of the vehicle.
- Affected by the actual road conditions, vehicle tires and load, the actual rotation effect of the vehicle is different from the reference trajectory. Please always pay attention to the actual

 **WARNING**

trajectory of the vehicle and drive cautiously.

 **CAUTION**

- Activate this mode when the vehicle is stationary.
- Please turn off the automatic parking, dragging function and driving assistance function before turning on this function.
- Use this function on a flat and even road surface.
- Please activate the function according to the operation prompt on the infotainment touchscreen.
- The system may be overheated if it is used continuously for a long time. Please pay attention to the use time.
- Frequent use of this function may cause certain damage to the tire. Please pay attention to the frequency of use.
- There is a difference in steering flexibility in non-use scenarios. Please always pay attention to the vehicle rotation track.
- This function can realize continuous U-turn and user-defined angle U-turn. By default, the vehicle can rotate without stepping on the accelerator pedal. Stepping on the accelerator pedal during continuous U-turn can increase the rotation speed of the vehicle. Please operate with caution.



## CAUTION

- Please select the appropriate terrain mode according to the actual road conditions.

### Burst Mode

#### Burst mode introduction

- Burst mode is suitable for low-speed climbing, tug-of-war and other scenes. It is characterized by improving the traction capacity and body stability of the vehicle. There are two sub-modes of climbing and tug-of-war in this mode.
- Climbing mode is mainly aimed at low-speed off-road scenes, which can control wheel speed faster and more accurately to bring the best slow off-road experience.
- Tug-of-war mode is mainly aimed at tug-of-war and traction conditions. In this mode, tires can get better grip to give full play to the best traction performance of the whole vehicle.

#### How to Use

- Mode activated
  - The vehicle is stationary and the "OK" indicator is illuminated.
  - Tap the infotainment touchscreen → Driving mode App → Burst mode, or wake up by voice "Hi, DENZA, enter the Burst mode" to enter the driving mode App, click the Burst mode, read and agree to the pop-up instructions and risk tips, and then click "Agree" to enter.
- Mode exit
  - To exit the mode, switch to another mode using the mode scroll button or the off-road scroll button on the steering wheel.

- Click the exit button on the center infotainment touchscreen.

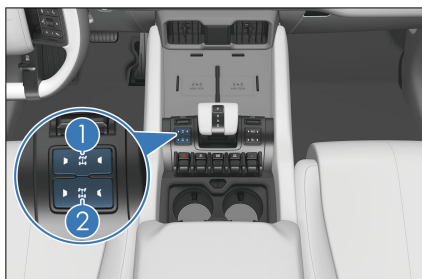


## CAUTION

- When burst mode is activated, the differential lock is required to be locked for maximum vehicle capacity.
- After entering the burst mode, L function will be automatically turned on. If L function fails to be turned on, it will exit the burst mode. At this time, you can try to move the vehicle back and forth and then enter the burst mode.
- The tug-of-war may cause damage to the vehicle, so please drive carefully.
- If there is continuous skidding on wet and muddy roads, you can try to switch to other terrain modes.

## Differential Lock

- The differential lock is mainly applicable to off-road roads. When one side of the tire slips, the differential lock can be started to adjust the power imbalance caused by the tire slip to help the vehicle out of trouble.
- ① Front differential lock\* locked/unlocked
  - Press this button to lock/unlock.
- ② Rear differential lock locked/unlocked
  - Press this button to lock/unlock.



### CAUTION

- Lock the front differential lock and then lock the rear differential lock\*.
- Only perform the lockup in the following cases:
  - OK indicator is on.
  - The vehicle speed is below 4 km/h.
  - The speed difference between left and right wheels is less than 50 rpm;
  - Driver assistance, remote control driving, U-turn and other functions are not activated.
- The differential lock is automatically unlocked when one of the following conditions is met:
  - The vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h;
  - Switch to non-terrain mode;
  - Power off the vehicle;
  - Unlocking the rear differential lock will automatically unlock the front differential lock\*.

### WARNING

- Do not drive violently when the differential lock is locked.
- It is forbidden to use the differential lock on paved roads

### WARNING

(such as normal roads and cement roads).

- When the differential lock is locked, large angle turns should be reduced, which may damage the parts of the vehicle transmission system.
- When the differential lock is engaged, control the vehicle carefully and avoid sharp turns. Otherwise, the vehicle stability will be seriously affected, increasing the risk of accidents.
- After getting out of trouble, the differential lock should be released immediately.

### REMINDER

- Typical application scenarios are cross-axis working conditions such as mud, snow and other low-attached roads, rock roads, uneven roads and so on.
- If it is difficult to lock and unlock the vehicle, please move forward at a low speed and gently turn the steering wheel left and right to assist the locking and unlocking of the vehicle.

## Intelligent Hydraulic Control System (YunNian-P)

YunNian-P is an intelligent hydraulic system with active vibration reduction and adaptive driving height, which has adjustable height, damping and stiffness control technology to cope with off-road scenes with extreme performance.

Users can switch the driving mode to get the corresponding comfort performance

and control performance. See the following table for details:

Driving Mode	Default height	Default damping
Comfort	Standard	Comfort
Sport	Standard	Sport
Economic	Standard	Comfort
Snow mode	Standard	Comfort
Sand mode	Standard	Sport
Mountain mode	High	Sport
Mud mode	High	Comfort
Snow Chain Function	High	Comfort
Wading mode	High	Comfort
Towing mode	Standard	Sport

- Normal (N) level:
  - standard vehicle height, suitable for driving on paved roads.
- High (H) height mode
  - Compared with the "N" gear, the front axle is about 50 mm higher and the rear axle is about 50 mm higher, which is suitable for driving on unpaved roads and off-road ground.
- Low (L) height mode
  - Compared with the "N" gear, the front of the vehicle is lowered by 25 mm and the rear by 20 mm, which is suitable for getting on and off and carrying luggage.

### Suspension height adjustment

- Operation panel adjustment
  - The user can adjust the suspension height through the lever by the operating panel. Toggle suspension up to raise; toggle it down to lower.



- Adjust the central console height
  - The user can adjust the vehicle height by clicking the lift arrow on the left side of the screen by the infotainment touchscreen → Application center → YunNian App → Suspension settings.


### ! REMINDER

- Before adjusting the suspension height, be sure to check the environment under and around the vehicle in advance to ensure that there are no people



## REMINDER

or obstacles, so as to avoid accidents.

- If you adjust the vehicle height several times frequently, the system may overheat. At this time, you will not be able to continue the adjustment. You need to wait for the system to cool down before continuing the adjustment.
- Vehicle height adjustment will be inhibited by the following conditions: Door opening, steep slope parking, deep stepping on the brake/accelerator pedal, charging and discharging.
- When the height cannot be adjusted due to the fault of the YunNian-P, the instrument will light up the suspension fault warning lamp . In order to ensure your best driving experience, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to deal with.




## Suspension height adjustment with speed

- The suspension height of YunNian-P is automatically adjusted according to the speed when the vehicle is running.
- In the sand driving mode, the default suspension height is N gear, which can be manually adjusted to H gear in static state.
- In the sand driving mode, if the suspension height is set to gear H, it will drop to gear H2 (25 mm) when the vehicle speed is greater than 15km/h and drop to gear N when the vehicle speed is greater than 45km/h.
- In comfort, sport, economy and snow driving modes, if the suspension

height is set to "Super High", the suspension height will be reduced to gear H3 (25 mm) when the vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h, and the suspension height will be automatically reduced to gear N when the vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h.

- In comfort, sport, economy and snow driving modes, if the suspension height is set to N gear, the height will remain at N gear and it will not change with speed.
- In comfort, sport, economy and snow driving mode, if the suspension height is set to "Super Low", the suspension height will be increased to N gear when the vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h.
- In the mountain, mud, snow chain, wading and trailer driving modes, if the suspension height is "super high", the suspension height will be automatically reduced to H2 (25 mm) when the vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h, and to N gear height when the vehicle speed is greater than 45 km/h. The suspension height will be raised to gear H2 when the speed is below 25km/h, and will be raised to gear H when the speed is below 5km/h.

## Suspension height locking


- When passing through the pothole road, it is recommended to adjust the suspension to the H gear, and turn on the height locking function in the infotainment touchscreen → application center  → YunNian App → suspension adjustment →  to fix the height at the H gear position, so as to prevent the chassis from bumping when the suspension is lowered with speed.
- After the function is turned on, the "OFF" indicator light  of the

instrument is always on, and the suspension height is fixed at the current height.


#### REMINDER

- Suspension height locking only prohibits manual adjustment and speed-dependent adjustment at low speeds (30 km/h).

#### Comfort control

- Users can select three comfort control modes of "weak", "moderate" or "strong" by the infotainment touchscreen → Application center  → YunNian App → Suspension settings.
- During acceleration and deceleration, the vehicle experiences pitch motion caused by load transfer. The comfort control suppresses the vehicle pitch by coordinating the suspension damping and the brake end pressure, which improves the driving comfort.

#### Greeting mode

- The user can enable or disable the greeting mode by the infotainment touchscreen → Application center  → YunNian App → Suspension settings.
- After the function is turned on, the vehicle is turned off. If the suspension height of the vehicle is in gear N, the height is automatically reduced to gear L, which is convenient for getting on and off.
- The greet mode is available when the following conditions are met:
  - The driving mode of the vehicle is comfortable, sporty and economic, and the current height is N gear height;
  - Enabling the greeting function;
  - The driving gear is in Park;


- Vehicle flameout.

- After powered on again, the suspension will automatically recover to the N gear height.

#### CAUTION

- After the greeting function is turned on, please do not park the vehicle in a place with obvious bulges or other unevenness, so as to prevent the chassis from being scratched by the falling suspension.

#### Easy access

- The user can enable or disable the fetch mode by the infotainment touchscreen → Application center  → YunNian App → Suspension settings.
- After the function is turned on, open the back door, the rear suspension will automatically drop to the lowest level, and the front suspension remains unchanged. Close the back door, and the rear suspension will return to its original height. (Trunk manual adjustment suspension height see **P99**)
- The fetch mode is available when the following conditions are met:
  - The driving mode is economical, comfort, or sport.
  - The driving gear is in Park;
  - Enabling the fetching function;
  - The trunk is open.

#### REMINDER

- When the fetching mode is turned on, the vehicle is turned off and the back door is opened, the fetching mode will also be

## REMINDER

triggered when the battery power is satisfied.




### Camping leveling


- Users can enable the camping mode by pulling down the profile options in the convenience bar of the infotainment touchscreen.
- After the function is turned on, the car body is adjusted to a horizontal state, and the adjustment process is reminded by animation and text on the infotainment touchscreen.
- The camping leveling mode is available when the following conditions are met:
  - The driving mode is normal, sport, eco, snow or sand mode.
  - The driving gear is in Park;
  - Enabling the camping leveling

## REMINDER

- If the ground is too rough, it may cause insufficient suspension travel to level.

### Repair mode

- The user can enable or disable the Maintenance mode by the infotainment touchscreen → System → Overhaul or by the infotainment touchscreen →  → Application center  → YunNian App → Suspension settings.
- When the function is turned on, the suspension height is locked, the adjustment cannot be set, there is a text reminder on the central control screen, and the indicator light  of the instrument is always on.

- Repair mode is disabled when the vehicle speed is higher than 3 km/h.
- Repair mode automatically exits when the vehicle speed is higher than 8 km/h for over three minutes.
- When the height cannot be adjusted due to the fault of the Yunnian intelligent hydraulic system, the suspension fault indicator lamp lights  up and the suspension lifting arrow on the instrument disappears.

### Ultra high function

- When the user finds that the vehicle supports the bottom and needs to continue to raise the height, he can trigger the super-high function by stepping on the brake pedal and pulling up the suspension adjustment lever for more than 7 seconds.
- When the Super High function is turned on, the suspension system pressure will reach the maximum, and the specific lifting height will depend on the vehicle load.
- Conditions for ultra-high function triggering:
  - The driving gear is in Park.
- High function exit conditions:
  - When the suspension is manually lowered or the vehicle speed exceeds about 10km/h and lasts for 5s, the ultra high function exits and the suspension automatically lowers to the previous gear height.

### Ultra low function

- When the user finds that the height is limited and the vehicle needs to continue to lower the height, the ultra-low function can be triggered by stepping on the brake pedal and pulling down the suspension adjustment lever for more than 7 seconds.

- The front height of the ultra-low function vehicle drops to 25 mm lower than L gear, and the rear height of the vehicle drops to 25 mm lower than L gear.
- Conditions for ultra-low function triggering:
  - The current height gear is in L.
  - The driving gear is in Park.
- Ultra low function exit conditions:
  - Manually raise the suspension or the vehicle speed is greater than 30km/h for 5s, and the vehicle rises to the N gear height.

#### Additional notes

- DiSus working environment
  - The operating temperature range of YunNian-P is -30 °C ~ 100 °C.
- Load balance
  - When the driving mode is comfort, sport, economy, snow and sand, the number of passengers or luggage load on the vehicle changes, and the suspension can automatically adjust to the default height of each mode after opening and closing the door once.
- Switching of vehicle height mode
  - The default suspension height is associated with the driving mode.
- Disus secondary regulation
  - When the whole vehicle is in "P" gear, the suspension may be adjusted once and then fine-tuned twice according to its own judgment.

#### WARNING

- Warning before vehicle height switching

#### WARNING

- Before lowering the vehicle, please make sure that there are no people or obstacles under and around the vehicle.
- When using the service mode or when installing the tire chain
  - Please stop the suspension control and start the service mode to avoid the danger caused by the height change of the vehicle.
- When using the fetch mode and the greeting mode
  - After the function is turned on, make sure that the parking position is flat and there are no obstacles under the vehicle.
- When using camping leveling
  - Please ensure that the gear is in P, all doors are closed, and do not step on the brake pedal.
- When the current height is in high gear
  - Please note that the high gear is applicable in harsh conditions such as off-road. At this time, the center of gravity will be higher, which may cause dangerous situations such as vehicle instability when turning sharply. Please use it carefully.
- Ultra high/low function
  - Ultra-high/ultra-low function belongs to emergency scenario application, and frequent use may cause vehicle damage.
- Repair mode
  - When replacing tires, repairing chassis and lifting, the

## WARNING

maintenance mode must be turned on to avoid abnormal suspension posture caused by replacing parts.

- When using the lifting machine, in order to avoid collision between the lifting machine and the electric pedal, the lifting seat needs to be added with a lifting sleeve (the height of the sleeve in Z direction  $\geq 100\text{mm}$ ).
- Do not start the vehicle while the suspension is being checked and serviced.

## Fuel-Efficient Driving

Fuel consumption and driving range are influenced by various factors. Some corresponding measures, such as good driving style and regular maintenance can not only improve the driving range and reduce fuel consumption, but also be conducive to environmental protection.

- Drive in economic mode as much as possible.
- Keep the vehicle in good condition.
  - Perform regular maintenance: Regular maintenance of the vehicle can ensure a longer lifespan and optimal economy for the vehicle.
  - Regularly check tire pressure: Check the tire pressure at least twice a month and before long trips. Adjust the tire pressure as necessary. Low tire pressure increases rolling resistance, which can increase both power consumption and fuel consumption, and accelerate tire wear.
- Use the economic speed as much as possible:
  - Maintaining economic speed can effectively improve driving range and reduce fuel consumption. Excessively high or low speeds are not beneficial for fuel efficiency. Under safe conditions, try to keep your vehicle at the economic speed.
- Predictive driving:
  - On the premise of ensuring driving safety:
    - Avoid unnecessary parking or braking.
    - Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
    - When approaching a red light, release the accelerator pedal to allow the vehicle to coast to a stop.
  - Keep a steady speed.
- Use the energy recovery system properly
  - Under safe driving conditions, select an appropriate braking intensity based on different road conditions to match the vehicle's driving state. To fully utilize the energy recovery system, please apply gentle braking to decelerate and avoid abrupt stops.
- Reduce unnecessary in-vehicle items:
  - Additional weight increases energy consumption.
- Use the air conditioning system properly
  - The heating and cooling processes are highly energy-intensive, significantly reducing driving range and increasing fuel consumption. Reasonable use of the air conditioning system can effectively reduce both electricity and fuel consumption.
- Turn off unnecessary features:

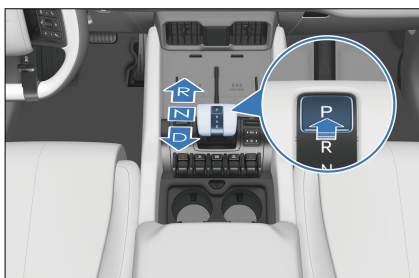
- Interior heating consumes a huge amount of electrical energy (e.g. seat heating\* etc.) and should be switched off when not required.

### ! REMINDER

- During the break-in period, do not drive the vehicle under heavy loads or at a speed that exceeds the maximum allowed speed.
- It is recommended to accelerate gradually to reduce wear and tear caused by sudden acceleration.

## Gear Shift Controls

- The gear position of the gear actuator is marked on the gearshift lever as shown on the right.
- "P" : Park. Press this button to park the vehicle and the parking indicator will light up. By pressing the brake pedal to start the vehicle, you can shift from Park to another position.



### ! CAUTION

- To prevent damage, press the "P" button only after the vehicle has completely stopped.
- "R": Reverse, used only when the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

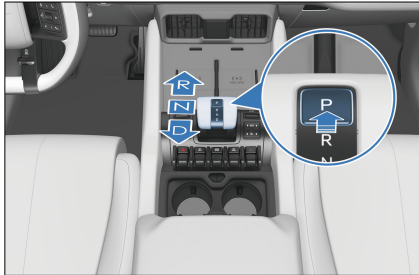
- "N": Neutral, used for temporary stop. Under all circumstances, always shift to "P" before the driver gets out.
  - In Park, to shift into Neutral, press the brake pedal, move the shift lever forward to the first gear, and hold it for 0.5 second.
  - In Drive, to shift into Neutral, move the shift lever forward to the first gear and hold it for 0.5 second.
  - In Reverse, to shift into Neutral, move the shift lever backward to the first gear and hold it for 0.5 second.
- "D": Drive. Shift to "D" to drive the vehicle normally.
  - If the shift is successful, the lever returns to its middle position after it is released.
  - Turn the ignition on before shifting into Drive.
  - Shifting out of Park or into Drive requires pressing the brake pedal. For details, see the prompt message on the instrument cluster.
- To prevent unintended vehicle movement, press the "P" button once the vehicle has stopped completely. The electronic parking brake (EPB) is automatically applied and the EPB indicator lights up.

### ! CAUTION

- If the EPB indicator fails to turn on after the vehicle is shifted into "P", go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙️ → **Drive** → **Driving Control** to enable the EPB. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.

## The P Parking Switch

- Press this button to park the vehicle and the button lights up with the vehicle shifted into "P".



## Electricity generation in "P"

When the vehicle SOC is low, press the "P" button and shift into Park, and the engine drives the generator to charge the high-voltage battery. During electricity generation, the engine speed is different from the normal idle speed (see **P118**), and it automatically exits after generating a certain amount of electricity. If high-power generation or more electricity is needed, step on the accelerator pedal and stop after generating more electricity.

- Activating conditions for electricity generation in "P":
  - The high-voltage battery SOC is very low.
  - The high-voltage battery temperature is moderate.
  - The powertrain has no limitations or fault prompts.
- Deactivating conditions for electricity generation in "P":
  - A certain amount of electricity is generated.
  - The high-voltage battery temperature is very high or very low.
  - The powertrain has limitations or fault prompts.

- The engine or clutch fails.

## Shutting the engine down in "P"

When the vehicle SOC is high, the engine is automatically shut down after "P" is engaged, and the power consumption of electric equipment is supplied by the high-voltage battery, which can reduce fuel consumption and noise in the vehicle in idle condition.

- Activating conditions for shutting the engine down in "P":
  - The high-voltage battery SOC is high.
  - The high-voltage battery temperature is moderate.
  - The powertrain has no limitations or fault prompts.
- Deactivating conditions for shutting the engine down in "P":
  - The high-voltage battery temperature is very high or very low.
  - The high-voltage battery is low.
  - The outside temperature is very low, and there is a need for heating or defrosting.
  - The powertrain has limitations or fault prompts.

## WARNING

- If the engine or motor is shut down, do not allow the vehicle to move after it has been shifted to "N", to avoid accidents due to insufficient braking force.
- When the engine or motor is running and the vehicle is in the "R"/"D" gear, be sure to stop the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal, as the actuator can still transmit force and the vehicle can travel slowly even in its idle condition.


**! WARNING**

- If you want to shift a gear while driving forward, do not step on the accelerator pedal to prevent accidents.
- In order to prevent accidents, never shift to "R" or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving.
- Never coast downhill in "N" or "P", even if the motor is not running.



## Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Be sure to engage the EPB every time before parking and leaving the vehicle.

### Engaging EPB Manually


When the vehicle is not in Park and EPB is released, press the brake pedal and engage electronic parking brake (EPB) on shortcut menu or infotainment touchscreen →  → **Drive** → **Driving Control**. Then, EPB applies appropriate parking force, and the indicator on the instrument cluster flashes and then is steady on, indicating that EPB is engaged. In addition, a text prompt "EPB activated" is displayed.

**! CAUTION**



- When  flashes, EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal until  is steady on. Otherwise the vehicle may move down.

### Engaging EPB Automatically

### Engaging EPB automatically with the ignition off

- When the ignition is switched off, EPB is engaged automatically and  lights up on the instrument cluster.

### Shifting into Park


- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily and shift into Park. EPB is engaged automatically. Do not release the brake pedal until  on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB activated" message is displayed.
- Press and hold the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily. If the driver's door is opened in Drive or Reverse, do not release the brake pedal until  on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.

**! WARNING**

- Refrain from excessively utilizing the automatic EPB engagement triggered by opening the driver's door, as it may result in the EPB not engaging properly or insufficient clamping force, leading to rollaway risks. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

**! CAUTION**

- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope; otherwise the vehicle may slip back.
- Engaging EPB automatically with the ignition off is designed to improve the vehicle safety. Excessive reliance or frequent use of the function may lead to low SOC of low-voltage battery,


 **CAUTION**

resulting in the risk of vehicle slipping due to insufficient EPB clamping force. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

### Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start


Releasing by shifting gear:

- With the vehicle parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift from "P" or "N" into a driving gear such as "D" or "R". EPB is released automatically, the indicator goes off, and the "EPB released" message is displayed.

 **CAUTION**

- Be sure to always press and hold the brake pedal when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The EPB system conducts power-up self-check within several seconds after the vehicle is started. In this process, the system does not respond to any function.

Releasing by pressing the accelerator pedal

- When the vehicle has been started and the gear is in a driving gear such as Drive or Reverse, engage EPB on the infotainment touchscreen, then simply press the accelerator pedal slowly to a certain degree. EPB is released automatically and  turns off with the message "EPB released" displayed.

### Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails

- When the vehicle is in motion and ESC system works normally, controlled deceleration for parking brake (CDP) can be used for emergency braking if braking fails or is blocked.
  - Press the "P" button for over two seconds to force the vehicle to brake. Pressing the brake pedal simultaneously allows the vehicle to decelerate faster.
  - You can release the "P" button to stop braking.
  - After the vehicle stops, EPB remains engaged and must be released again before you can start the vehicle.

 **CAUTION**


- When CDP is activated, if the accelerator pedal is pressed more deeply, CDP will exit and the vehicle will keep running.

 **WARNING**

- For safety considerations, refrain from using the "P" button for emergency braking in normal driving. If the brake pedal fails or is blocked, try to keep the vehicle under control before using the emergency braking function.
  - As the EPB cannot go beyond the physical limit of road adhesion, activating the emergency brake function may result in vehicle drift, sideslip, or deflection when the vehicle passes through bends or dangerous/heavy-traffic road sections, or when the vehicle is driven under severe weather conditions. Be careful to avoid any accident.

## EPB Trailer Mode

The EPB trailer mode is designed for the situation when EPB is automatically engaged with the ignition off. When the vehicle needs to be powered off for being towed, or when it malfunctions, you can switch on the mode to exit EPB.

- Enable EPB trailer mode on the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Drive** → **Driving Control**.
- EPB trailer mode activation conditions (all must be met):
  - The vehicle is in Park.
  - Press the brake pedal.
  - The charging connector is not connected, and the vehicle is not being charged.






### CAUTION

- When the activating conditions of EPB trailer mode are not met, a corresponding prompt message displays on the infotainment touchscreen.
- After activating the EPB trailer mode, the corresponding screen always displays on the infotainment touchscreen unless you tap to exit the EPB trailer mode.
- When the vehicle is on a slope and you need to enable the EPB trailer mode, do not release the brake pedal during the process to avoid vehicle slipping.
- If the vehicle fails and needs towing, see **P290** for recommended towing method.
- EPB trailer mode exiting conditions (one of them is enough):

- Disable EPB tow trailer mode on the infotainment touchscreen.
- Press the "P" button.
- Charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

## EPB System Indicator

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged,  is solid on the instrument cluster.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged,  on the instrument cluster turns on and then turns off in three seconds.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB system starts self-check.  turns on and then turns off in about three seconds on the instrument cluster. If it does not, the EPB or braking system may be faulty. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

## EPB Operating Sound

- EPB motor noises can be heard while the EPB is being engaged or released.
- If there is a burning smell or unusual noises after emergency braking is activated, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider immediately.



### WARNING

- To prevent the vehicle from moving, make sure the vehicle is in Park and EPB is engaged before leaving the vehicle.
- To prevent serious accidents, never allow any passenger in the vehicle to operate the EPB button when the vehicle is running.



## **WARNING**

- When the EPB is being engaged or released, the brake pedal must be pressed to prevent the vehicle from moving, and the subsequent locking of the gearshift that occurs because the EPB cannot provide a sufficient parking force.
- For safety considerations, refrain from using EPB for braking in normal driving. It is preferred to be used when the brake pedal fails or is blocked.
- As the EPB cannot go beyond the physical limit of road adhesion, activating the emergency brake function may result in vehicle drift, sideslip, or deflection when the vehicle passes through bends or dangerous/heavy-traffic road sections, or when the vehicle is driven under severe weather conditions. Be careful to avoid any accident.



## **Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)**

Auto Vehicle Hold (AVH): is activated automatically when the vehicle needs to be stationary on the road for longer periods of time, such as in traffic jams on a slope or waiting at traffic lights.

### **AVH standby**

- When the ignition is on, enable AVH by the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Drive** → **Driving Control**. AVH standby indicator  is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Press the AVH switch again to disable AVH.



### **AVH activated**

- When the AVH standby indicator  is solid on, press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH. At this time, the vehicle is in AVH state with  displayed on the instrument cluster.

## **CAUTION**

- For AVH to be activated, all of the following conditions must be met:
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened and the doors are closed.
  - Intelligent power braking system and electronic park brake (EPB) systems are normal.
  - Pressing the accelerator pedal, shifting into Park, or engaging the EPB can make AVH exit to the standby status.
  - AVH has a memory function that retains its previous state when the vehicle is restarted.

### **AVH working**

- The AVH runs normally when it is activated, brake lights and the high-mount brake light are on, and the AVH indicator  on the instrument cluster is solid on.
- The AVH exits to the standby mode after the vehicle stops for 10 minutes, with the AVH standby indicator  on and the vehicle in Park.
  - Shift into “D”, drive the vehicle normally, then press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH.

### **AVH exits**

- When the AVH function runs normally, the following actions make AVH exit

and shift the vehicle from Drive to Park automatically:

- Opening the driver's door.
- Unlock the driver's seat belt.
- Stopping the vehicle in Drive with EPB activated.
- Pressing the AVH switch to disable it when releasing the brake pedal.

### AVH suppressed

- Shift into Reverse and then AVH enters the slow-moving condition. When the vehicle is reversing (in Reverse) or shifts from Reverse into Drive to travel at a low speed, AVH cannot be activated but stays on standby to facilitate low-speed vehicle motion.
- To exit slow-moving mode, press the AVH switch or drive at a speed above 10 km/h. The AVH function is on standby and can be activated normally.

## Driving Precautions

- Slow down when driving against strong winds.
- Drive slowly and carefully along gravel roads. To prevent tire damage, do not drive over sharp-edged objects or other road obstacles. Or it will severely damage the tires.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads. Otherwise, the impact may seriously damage wheels.
- Cleaning the vehicle or driving through deep water may wet brakes. When checking if they are wet, first ensure the surroundings are safe, then gently press the brake pedal. If you do not feel normal braking force, the brakes may be wet and need to be dried. While driving carefully, lightly press the brake pedal with the EPB engaged.

- If the wheel is stuck, it is recommended that you switch to sand mode to get out of the trap. However, if the vehicle power is low, all four wheels slip, EV function is limited or ESC system fails, the vehicle may not be able to get out of trouble successfully.

### WARNING

- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the vehicle, guide them to correctly use vehicle features, and prevent children and other passengers operating control switches such as window switches in a wrong way.
- Make sure no occupant sticks their head or hands outside the vehicle, specially when it comes to children.
- Be careful when accelerating or braking on slippery roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.
- Do not leave the vehicle when the drive motor is running.
- During driving, if the "START/STOP" button is pressed for more than 3s, the power output of the vehicle is cut off to realize emergency power-off. At this time, the vehicle will shift from "OK" to "ON", and is unable to drive normally. The hazard lights will also be automatically activated by default.
- In case of emergency power off, it is recommended to control the vehicle to slide to the side, and gradually slow down to stop the vehicle by trying to step on the brake pedal, pulling the hand

## WARNING

brake at low speed or using the surrounding obstacles.

- Emergency power return is only used for emergency evacuation.

## CAUTION

- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.
- Under normal driving conditions, do not put your foot on the brake pedal for a long time to prevent overheating, wear and power waste caused by stepping on the brake lightly for a long time at low speed.
- Slow down when driving down steep slopes, and avoid braking too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects brake performance.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible on wet roads.
- Large amounts of water entering the engine compartment can cause damage to the engine power system or electrical components.

## REMINDER

- If the vehicle battery is low, you can use the on-board generator function. Refer to **P117** for more information.

### Winter Driving Precautions

- Make sure the coolant is freeze-proof.

- Use the same type of coolant as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature.
- Incorrect coolant damages the cooling system.
- Check the low-voltage battery and cables conditions.
  - The low-voltage battery's capacity is lower in cold weather, so they must be fully charged in winter.
- Confirm that the engine oil viscosity is suitable for winter driving.
- Avoid door frost.
  - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin in the lock hole to prevent freezing.
- Use anti-freeze washer fluid.
  - Such products are available in DENZA Auto Authorized Service Store and all auto parts stores.
  - The water and anti-freeze ratio must conform to manufacturer instructions.

## CAUTION

- Use special washer fluid to prevent paint damage.
- Prevent ice and snow from going under the fender liner.
  - Steering is difficult with ice or snow accumulating under the fenders. When driving in cold weather, stop from time to time and check for snow and ice under the fenders.
- It is recommended to carry emergency tools or items for different road conditions.
  - It is advisable to have snow chains, window scraper, bags of sand and salt, flashing signal, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.

## Winter Tires

- Winter tires provide better traction on snowy roads. The special rubber tread pattern makes the tires less affected by low temperatures and delivers excellent braking performance to improve driving safety.

## Usage tips

- It is recommended to use winter tires in snow or ice conditions or at temperatures below 7°C. When temperatures rise to above 7°C, install summer or all-season tires instead for driving safety and better performance.
- Winter tires must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by vehicle manufacturer.
- Winter tires must have adequate tread depth. Tires with a tread depth less than 4 mm do not perform well in winter conditions.
- Winter or summer tires are designed for specific acceleration conditions. Use them in the corresponding seasons to avoid poor traction or braking performance.
- Do not exceed the speed rating of winter tires, which is relatively low.
- After installing winter tires, inflate them to the design pressures.

## Highland Driving Precautions

- Impact of highland environment on brake fluid:
  - As altitude increases, atmospheric pressure significantly decreases.
  - This change will cause gases dissolved in the brake fluid to precipitate, thereby increasing the air content in the brake hydraulic circuit.
- Essential maintenance operations:

- After driving to high-altitude regions (typically referring to altitudes above 2500 meters), to ensure optimal performance of the brake system and driving safety, users shall go to the authorized dealer or qualified service provider for a standard gas discharging procedure for the integrated intelligent brake (IPB) system.

- This aims to thoroughly discharge the gases precipitated in the brake hydraulic circuit due to the high-altitude environment, restoring the normal working status of the brake system.

## Action requirements

- Observe this maintenance requirement.
- After entering a highland environment, go to operate gas discharging of IPB as soon as possible.
- Gas discharging may change the brake pedal feedback. Users be aware of this condition and reserve a longer braking distance, driving with caution.

## Potential risks

- Increased air content in the brake circuit will lead to longer brake pedal travel and a softer pedal feel. In severe cases, it may significantly reduce braking effectiveness and endanger driving safety.

# Driver Assistance

## About the Driver Assistance System

### Driver Assistance System Introduction

- The driver assistance system is only designed to assist the driver in driving, not an automatic or unmanned driving system. The driving assistance system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace their focused attention and accurate judgment. Although the system can provide a certain level of assistance, it cannot fully address all scenarios that may arise due to traffic, road conditions, visibility, adverse weather, or other environmental changes during driving. Therefore, the driver is solely responsible for all driving decisions and must ensure compliance with local traffic laws at all times.
- The functions of driver assistance system are divided into two categories: driving assist, safety assist.
  - Driving assist: It includes Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and intelligent cruise control (ICC), designed to assist the driver in driving.
  - Safety assist: It includes front, side, and rear safety assistance to support the driver in safe driving.

### WARNING

- Before using the driving assistance system, the driver is required to carefully read, understand, and comply with the relevant agreements and technical documents. Learn and master the essential knowledge of using the system, including

### WARNING

but not limited to: the user guide, general system limitations and functions' descriptions, scope of application, methods of use and precautions. During system use, strict compliance with the operating instructions is required to ensure safe and effective operation. BYD assumes no liability for property damage, personal injury, or other consequences caused by the driver's non-compliance with this manual, related agreements, and documents, unless otherwise mandated by law.

- The driving assistance system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace their focused attention and accurate judgment. When using the system, the driver must comply with local traffic laws and regulations, always hold the steering wheel, keep alert and monitor the surrounding environment for potential hazards. Intervene or take control timely when necessary to ensure safe driving. Otherwise, it may result in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.
- The terms and expressions related to vehicle control in this manual are designed to clearly and concisely communicate key points during system usage to drivers. During system operation, the driver remains the sole operator of the vehicle. It is required to continuously monitor the vehicle, system status, and external environment and respond as necessary. In the event of system limitations or unexpected scenarios, immediate manual

## WARNING

intervention and control are mandatory to ensure driving safety. Otherwise, it may lead to accidents, even property damage and personal injury.

- Drivers shall comply with local laws and regulations to legally use the functions of the driving assistance system, and shall not add functions, Apps, or tools to the system for any improper or illegal acts, nor shall they illegally collect and use personal information and geographic information data. BYD shall not bear any responsibility for any illegal activities resulting from the user's misuse, improper use, or unauthorized modification of the system functions or services. BYD reserves the right to temporarily disable system functions or even terminate services provided to the user. Additionally, BYD reserves the right to retain data related to the user's illegal activities for use as evidence by authorized agencies with legal procedures.

### Sensors of the Driver Assistance System

The vehicle is equipped with sensors such as MmWave radars and cameras.

### Sensor cleaning and maintenance

- Ensure that all radars and cameras are clean and the front windshield is clean and free from frost or fog. Dirt, obstructions, or attachments on the radar or camera surface, or dirt, frost, or fog on the front windshield may affect the system working.

- When a radar or camera is blocked or dirty, the instrument or infotainment touchscreen may display a message prompt. Clean and maintain accordingly. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider when necessary.
- Common radar or camera occlusion or dirty scenes and corresponding treatment suggestions:
  - If the radar or camera lens housing is covered with ice or frost, it is recommended to melt it using warm water or a antifreeze-containing cleaning solution. After melting, wipe the surface dry with a clean optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.
  - If the radar or camera lens housing surface is adhered with dust, mud spots (including muddy water stains), bird droppings, or other contaminants, it is recommended to rinse with running water or windshield-specific cleaning solution until the dirt and adhered contaminants soften or detach. Afterward, wipe the surface clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.
  - If the radar or camera lens housing surface has moisture or condensation, it is recommended to wipe it clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible water stains remain.
  - When driving in environments with poor lighting or obstructions, such as single-sided overpasses, tunnels, deserts, grasslands, or snowy areas, it is recommended to drive the vehicle away from the current environment so as to resolve the sensing faults due to obstructions, with no further actions required.

- Cleaning and maintenance tips:
  - When the windshield fogs up or there is a risk of fogging, it is recommended to turn on the windshield defrosting function to prevent fogging or frosting on the windshield.
  - Using a neutral cleaning agent (e.g., soap water) to clean stains on the radar surface is recommended. After cleaning, rinse the radar housing surface with clean water first, and then wipe it dry with a clean lint-free cloth.
  - Do not apply films, wax, non-OEM paint, vehicle wraps, or coatings to the radar housing area, as these actions may impair radar sensing performance.
  - Do not use a cleaning brush to clean the radar or camera, as sand or debris mixed into the brush may cause scratches on the lens housing and casing.
  - Do not use hot water to remove ice or snow from the lens housing, as it may cause the lens housing to crack.
  - Do not wipe the radar cover forcefully to avoid damaging the optical coating of the lens housing.
  - Do not use metal or other hard objects to scrape the contaminants or ice and snow on the surface of the lens housing and casing to avoid damage.
  - Avoid spraying directly on the radars and cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water.
  - The mmWave radars are installed in the front and rear bumpers respectively. Therefore, keep the bumpers clean in order to avoid influencing radar performance. Do not paint, add body kits, or

install metal or alloy (including electroplating operating) decorative parts on the bumper without permission.

### Sensor Limitations

- Limitations of radar and camera include but are not limited to:
  - Radars and cameras may have detection blind spots when perceiving the surrounding environment.
  - Radars and cameras may detect falsely such as incorrectly identifying the distance or speed of objects, or detecting objects when none are present.
  - Radar and camera sensors may miss a target, such as partially identifying or failing to detect vehicles, pedestrians, animals, or other obstacles. M
  - Many factors can affect sensor performance, leading to false detection or missed detection. Read **P169** carefully.

### **WARNING**

- It is strictly prohibited to use strong alkali, strong acid, ammonia-containing cleaning solvent, bleaching agent, cement cleaner, asphalt cleaning agent, glue remover, polishing agent or paint remover to clean radar and camera lens housings and casings.
- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if a radar or camera needs to be replaced. Do not install or use parts not approved by BYD or make modifications not approved by BYD.

## WARNING

- If the front windshield, fender, side mirror, bumper or trunk lid need to be replaced, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to ensure proper disposal of radars and cameras.
- If the area where a sensor (radar or camera) is installed is damaged or collided with, causing the sensors to become misaligned or damaged, the system may fail to work. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check.
- After a radar or camera is replaced, perform calibration in time. An unsuccessful calibration may affect the proper operation of the system.
- Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

### General Limitations of the Driver Assistance System

Driver assistance features employ a multi-sensor fusion algorithm. Various factors can impair their performance. These include but are not limited to device issues (including incorrect operations), environment of use (such as weather and road conditions), and influence of vehicles around and other road users. In specific:

#### device issues (including operator-related reasons)

- The mmWave radars or cameras are not yet calibrated or damaged or covered, for example, by ice, water, frost, mud, or dust.

- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as highway traffic signs, metal railings, and water reflection on the road.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the system in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or front windshield has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - Sensor or vehicle structural error has been caused due to scrapes, collisions, or other impacts, especially sensor displacement due to deformation or damage of the bumper, front windshield, side mirrors, body panels (for example, fenders and tailgate), frame, or other components.
- Trailer hitches or loaded objects protrude from the vehicle.
- Interference or obstruction is caused by bike rack or other non-standard accessories installed at the rear of the vehicle.
- Obstructions is caused by excessive paint (paint thickness changes) applied or adhesive products (such as tape, stickers, and car covers) attached.
- Do not use steering wheel cover on vehicles equipped with capacitive sensors. They could give rise to malfunctions.
- Cases where system performance may be reduced include but are not limited to:
  - Excessive wear of brake pads or abnormal brake system.
  - Improperly inflated or worn out tires.

- Unqualified tires installed.
- Snow chains installed.
- Use of a small spare tire or tire repair kit.
- When the vehicle is heavily loaded.

### **Environment factors affecting system performance**

- Radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection. In such cases, the vehicle may not brake as expected or may brake late.
- On roads with sharp curves (winding roads, for example), the vehicle ahead may be out of sensor detection for a few seconds, possibly causing the vehicle to accelerate automatically.
- The system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires constant attention on the surroundings.
- The system cannot be activated in tow, snow, mud, sand, terrain, and other special driving modes\*.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheeler, or motorized bicycle, or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles.
- The vehicle is driven in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, fog, or smog, or on icy and slippery curves.
- Visibility is poor due to heavy smoke, splashing water, dust, or exhaust emissions from nearby vehicles.
- Lane lines are excessively worn, blocked, or covered, have disappeared, are overlapping old ones, have been adjusted in road constructions or change rapidly.
- The vehicle is in intense light (for example, oncoming headlights or direct sunlight) or low-light conditions (for example, dawn, dusk, and nighttime).
- The vehicle experiences extreme lighting contrast, for example, at the tunnel entrance or exit.
- The environment is in extremely hot or cold.
- Weight or width limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations may be mistaken for speed limit signs.
- If a speed limit sign is unclear or distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered, the camera may be unable to recognize the sign completely or clearly.
- The vehicle is in complex road conditions, such as steep slopes, sharp curves, continuous curves, narrow winding roads, narrow lanes, off-road roads, rough roads, roads with grooves or potholes (e.g., manholes), roads with a drop-off or cliff on one side, raised road shoulders, excessively wide lanes, construction zones (e.g., areas with traffic cones), or areas involving on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll gates.
- The vehicle is in poor road conditions, such as slippery or soft surfaces (such

as water accumulation, ice, snow accumulation, muddy roads, gravel roads, or sandy roads), blurred lane markings, or damaged road signs.

### Vehicles around and other road users

- Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
- Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
- Close-proximity non-motorized vehicles (including but not limited to two-wheelers, three-wheelers, bicycles, motorcycles, trolleys, strollers, and shopping carts), animals, and pedestrians (especially children)
- Upturned vehicles, vehicles in extremely abnormal sizes, and vehicles with irregular shapes, such as flatbed trucks, engineering vehicles, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo
- Irregularly shaped strange obstacles nearby, such as transparent stools, chairs, tables, water barriers, and traffic cones, which are difficult for the system to identify
- Vehicles with large areas of monotonous background colors
- Complex traffics, including vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, animals, or other obstacles appearing suddenly and approaching rapidly, as well as settings such as on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll stations

### WARNING

- If the sensors are displaced or damaged after scrapes or collisions (including minor impacts), do not use driver assistance functions. Instead, contact a BYD authorized dealer

### WARNING

or service provider for inspection and servicing.


- For safety considerations, do not use driver assistance features in bad weather or in poor lighting conditions.
- For safety considerations, do not deliberately test driver assistance features, for example, by waiting for system reaction to emergencies without manual intervention.
- Read carefully all instructions to avoid feature deactivation or danger incurred by incorrect operations. For example, the acceleration request overrides emergency braking if the accelerator paddle is depressed with AEB on.
- Because of its limitations, the driver assistance system may give improper warnings or intervention while monitoring the surroundings. It may also raise false alarms as a result of operation misinterpretation. Stay alert.
- Because the system cannot accurately detect and react to emergency in the surroundings, you must be always ready to intervene or take control of the vehicle (by deceleration, braking, steering or so) whenever necessary. Failure to observe precautions above could result in an accident or personal injuries.

# Driving Assist


## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

### Function overview

- Adaptive cruise control (ACC), an extension of traditional cruise control, uses sensors on a front mmWave radar or front camera to detect the relative distance and speed of the vehicle ahead, so as to maintain the set cruise speed or time-base following distance. When there are no vehicles ahead, the vehicle maintains the set target cruise speed, and adjusts speed according to the set time-based following distance once a front vehicle is detected.

 **CAUTION**



- ACC is enabled by default and cannot be manually disabled. The driver can activate ACC using the buttons on the steering wheel. See "ACC Activation Methods" for details.
- ACC only serves to assist in cruise control, and your active steering



 **CAUTION**

wheel manipulation remains necessary for ensuring the correct traveling direction of the vehicle.

### ACC status

- ACC on: If the conditions for ACC activation are met, the driver can activate ACC using the steering wheel button. If the conditions are not met and the driver attempts to activate ACC, the instrument cluster will display a "Function Unavailable" message.
- ACC activated: The system can maintain the set cruise speed or automatically adjust the distance to the vehicle ahead. It will be overridden if the accelerator pedal is pressed and will continue when the pedal is released.
- ACC failure: ACC is not available. If the driver attempts activation, the instrument cluster will display a "Function Unavailable" message.

Function Status	Indicator	Display Status	Meaning
ACC on		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on but not activated yet in the current power cycle.
ACC on		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on, can be activated, and had already been activated in the current power cycle. The last set cruise speed is displayed in the indicator icon.

Active		Indicator on	ACC is active. The cruise speed set is displayed in the indicator icon.
ACC Fault		Indicator on	ACC is not available because it is faulty.

## Activating ACC

### Activation conditions

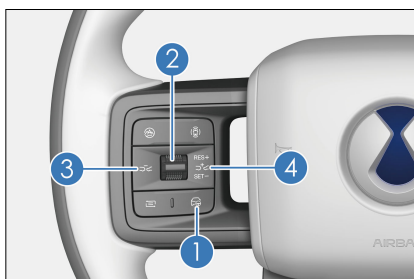
- EPB is not engaged.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The trunk, hood, and all doors are closed.
- The driver seat belt is fastened.
- The electronic stability control (ESC) system is on.
- The vehicle speed is not greater than 150 km/h.
- If the vehicle is stationary (zero speed), stepping on the brake pedal or engaging EPB activates ACC.
- If the vehicle is traveling (speed greater than 0), ACC can be activated when the brake pedal is not stepped on.
- There is no vehicle network communication failure prompt on the instrument cluster.
- The AEB function is not activated.

### CAUTION

- The ACC is suitable for highways and roads in good conditions, rather than complex urban or meandering roads.

### Activation methods

- During the current power cycle, the first activation of ACC can only be done using button ①. For subsequent activations, ACC can also be activated by toggling button ② upward.



- When activated via button ①, the system sets the current speed as the target cruise speed (if the current speed is below 30 km/h, it will be set to 30 km/h). When activated via button ②, the target cruise speed is set to the last value before exiting the function.

### WARNING

The system cannot automatically adjust speed to road and driving conditions. You are supposed to set target speed as per local traffic laws and regulations and respond to changes in a timely manner to ensure driving safety.

### Setting the target cruise speed

- When ACC is activated, you can set the target cruise speed between 30–150 km/h by moving ② up or down. Move ② briefly upward or downward

to increase or decrease the set speed by 5 km/h per press, or hold ② in either direction to adjust the speed continuously by 1 km/h each time.

 **WARNING**

- ACC cannot immediately slow down the vehicle to the desired speed. Never be over-reliant on the system.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

### Setting following distance

- Press ③ or ④ to decrease or increase the following distance from the vehicle ahead. At each setting level, the faster the speed, the longer the distance to the vehicle ahead.
- ACC increases or decreases the time-based following distance from level 1 to 4 in sequence, and the default setting is level 3.

### Cruise control

- When no front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain the set speed.

### Following

- When a vehicle ahead is detected, ACC helps the driver maintain a safe following distance and follow the vehicle by accelerating, decelerating, stopping, and starting as needed.
- On the instrument cluster, the followed vehicle in front is highlighted with

blue color. The following distance is fixed but varies with vehicle speed and the chosen following distance level (See "Setting the time-based following distance" ).

- When active, ACC helps adjust the following speed and target when the target cuts out or another vehicle cuts in and switches to cruise control (without distance control) if no new following target appears.

### Follow-to-stop/start

- Under normal driving conditions, ACC enables your vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead to start or stop:
  - If the vehicle ahead stops for a short time ( $\leq 2.5$  min), ACC can automatically resume following when the lead vehicle starts moving.
  - If the vehicle ahead stops for a long time (2.5–3 min), the driver need to depress the accelerator pedal or move ④ upward to start the vehicle according to prompt messages.
  - If the stop exceeds 3 minutes, ACC exits and EPB is engaged. In that case, you will have to disengage EPB and press the brake pedal in order to reactivate ACC.

 **WARNING**


- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local road regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ACC is unable to deal with oncoming traffics.
- ACC may not correctly recognize the target if the front vehicle or pedestrian is too close.

## **WARNING**

- On curves, the vehicle may follow a wrong target, leading to unintended traveling speed or direction. You must stay focus and take control of the vehicle in a timely and correct manner whenever noticing such situations.
- To prevent collisions, never be over-reliant on ACC adjustment of speed and following distance to keep a correct and safe distance from the front vehicle. You are responsible for determining and keeping the safe following distance.
- Pressing the activation lever/button or firmly pressing and then releasing the brake pedal while the vehicle is stationary exits ACC. This may cause the vehicle to move forward suddenly under idle power, potentially leading to an accident. Always pay attention to system prompts and traffic conditions. If unintended idle movement occurs, promptly take control of the vehicle to ensure safe driving.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

### **Manual acceleration with ACC active**

- You can enable or disable the manual acceleration function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping

 → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Adjust cruise speed by accelerator pedal**. The function is disabled by default.


- When ACC is activated, you can accelerate manually by pressing the accelerator pedal; the driver assistance system does not brake during this process.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal to increase current speed rapidly, and releasing the pedal to raise the target cruise speed.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed until the real-time vehicle speed exceeds the target cruise speed, the target cruise speed will be reset to the real-time speed when the pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is greater than 80km/h, the setting value of cruise speed will not be updated when the accelerator pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is below 80 km/h and the real-time speed is over 80 km/h after acceleration, the cruise speed is set to 80km/h when the accelerator pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is less than 80km/h and the real-time speed after acceleration is less than 80km/h, the real-time speed is set as the cruise speed when the accelerator pedal is released.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed and lever ② is pushed downward at the same time, the current speed will be set as the new target cruise speed.

### **Exiting ACC**

- When ICC is active and the vehicle is moving, you can deactivate the system by pressing button ① or depressing the brake pedal. When the vehicle is

stationary, the system can only be deactivated by pressing button ①.

### Curve speed reduction (also applicable to ICC)

- The curve speed reduction function only works when ACC is active.
- You can enable or disable the function on the central infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Curve speed reduction**. The function is disabled by default.
- After the function is turned on, when the vehicle is about to enter the curve under the active state of ICC, the system will slow down to the appropriate speed in advance according to the curvature of the curve to pass through the curve smoothly, so as to improve the driving safety and comfort.

### System Limitations

- Exterior ACC sensors
  - The mmWave radar and camera are installed in the front of the vehicle. Blockage of their field of view could interfere the intended functionality. In particular, if the sensor is covered by snow completely, ACC deactivates itself and informs of this on the instrument cluster. System functionality will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs on normal roads for a while.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheeler, or motorized bicycle, or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles.

- The front mmWave radar may have a transient failure from detection limitations if the vehicle runs in circular ramps or tunnels or under other special conditions for an extended period. The function will be recovered after the vehicle is away from such conditions.
- The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, making it malfunction.
- Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- Performance of front mmWave radar sensors and camera may be affected by vibration or collision. Have the system repaired in a timely manner.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection. In such cases, the ACC vehicle may not brake as expected or may brake late.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of ACC sensor detection for seconds, so ACC may accelerate.



### WARNING

- ACC cannot deal with sharp, consecutive, and other complex curves, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- Traffic flow and surroundings must be heeded for setting and adjusting the following distance. Even when ACC is properly set, the driver must be able to stop the vehicle at any time.

- The ACC system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires constant attention on the surroundings.
- The ACC system can only achieve limited braking instead of emergency braking.

 **WARNING**

- ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system and therefore cannot replace collision prevention warning, collision prevention brake, or other active safety assist features, which we strongly advise you to keep switched on (see Safety Assist for details).
- ACC cannot react to poles, bollards, and other obstacles, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- Do not overly rely on ACC for full deceleration and collision prevention. You need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- The vehicle may not be able to detour around front targets that risk colliding with it, especially when the target is stationary or when the vehicle is above 80 km/h.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down,

 **WARNING**

braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

- ACC cannot be activated in tow, snow, mud, sand, terrain, and other special driving modes.
- Situations where ACC and related features may work improperly or deactivate themselves include but are not limited to:
  - Vehicle issues (including but not limited to incorrect operations):
    - Vehicle speed is greater than 155 km/h.
    - Any door, the hood, or the trunk lid is open or faulty.
    - Tire pressure is abnormal.
    - Airbags are abnormal.
  - The vehicle is in any of the following states: not in Drive, in the process of braking, hill descent system/hill hold system/traction control system activated, colliding with or being collided by another vehicle, ignition off.
  - The vehicle's chassis, braking system, traction control system, or electronic stability system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.

- Environment factors (including but not limited to weather, visibility, road conditions):

- Low visibility settings such as nighttime, rainy, snowy, or foggy days, dusty environments, lack of lighting, low-light conditions, backlighting, and glare
- Road openings, intersections, narrow roads, and steep slopes
- Mountain roads and rural roads
- Waterlogged, icy, and snow-covered sections.
- Sharp curves, serpentine curves, switchback roads, and other high-curvature turns
- Unpaved roads such as muddy roads, gravel roads, and off-road trails
- Presence of curbs and other low-profile, static, or nearby obstacles

- Vehicles around and other road users (including but not limited to):

- Congested intersections
- Pedestrians and vehicles weaving through the intersection
- Sudden appearance of pedestrians, cyclists, and animals previously in the blind spot
- Sudden braking of the vehicle ahead
- Adjacent large vehicle merging into the vehicle's lane
- Pedestrians or other vehicles cutting in line, jaywalking or road-hogging, merging in from a sharp angle, or traveling in the wrong way
- Stationary vehicles, upturned vehicles, and vehicles with irregular shapes, such as flatbed

trucks, engineering vehicles, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo

- Front vehicle or adjacent front vehicle with any door open or things falling off
- Other issues
  - Include but are not limited to other situations listed under general system limitations.

### **WARNING**

- ACC cannot be activated with ESC disabled.
- ACC is suitable for highways and roads in good conditions, rather than complex urban or meandering roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. Set a time-based following distance compliant with the minimum requirement for the local driving environment.
- Pressing the accelerator or brake pedal while ACC is active allows you to take over the vehicle. Therefore, take caution to keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
- ACC may have no or slow responses to a vehicle ahead that brakes or stops suddenly, resulting in a risk of late braking.
- In some cases, such as when the vehicle ahead is going too slow, when lane change is too fast, or when the safe distance from the vehicle ahead is too short, there may be no adequate time for the system to decrease the relative

 **WARNING**

speed and the driver must take corresponding actions.

- If ACC is activated with the vehicle stationary, the system identifies any stationary obstacle ahead and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However, this function cannot identify all the obstacles, so the driver must be alert to the front obstacles or other traffic participants.
- When ACC is activated, a short distance from an adjacent lane (or a vehicle on an adjacent lane that is too close to the ACC vehicle's lane) may trigger ACC to brake.
- Vehicles coming into the ACC vehicle's lane and within its front camera detection range are identified as target vehicles and prompt a response accordingly, which may lead to hard or late braking.
- When ACC cannot identify the vehicle ahead as the target vehicle (no target is highlighted on the instrument), the driver must maintain control of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle stops while following another vehicle, the system, in rare cases, may not detect the rear of the vehicle ahead (such as the rear axle of a high-chassis truck or a bumper). In such cases, the system cannot ensure proper following distance, so the driver must stay alert and be ready to brake.
- Modifying the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis, may affect the ACC system.

 **WARNING**

- Do not use ACC when visibility is poor, or when driving on slopes, winding roads, or wet roads (covered in ice/snow or flooded).
- Because speed limit recognition could be misled by road conditions, always monitor the speed limit of the current road to ensure compliance with traffic laws. (Applicable to vehicles with single-operation speed limit setting function.)
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the front cameras in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or front windshield has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - Impaired ACC performance is noticed or the instrument cluster indicates a system error.

 **CAUTION**

- ACC is only a driving assistance function, and the precautions only include the common conditions that affect the adaptive cruise function. In addition, there may be other factors that may also affect the performance of the function. Drivers should always pay attention to the surrounding situation and take full responsibility for driving safety.

## CAUTION

- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.


## Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)

### Function overview


- Intelligent cruise control (ICC) assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the current lane at speeds between 0 and 130 km/h. It is primarily intended for use on roads with clear lane markings and in good driving conditions. When using ICC, the driver needs to control the driving route themselves. When the function is enabled, the driver must always hold the steering wheel and control the vehicle when necessary.
- ICC uses sensors such as radars and cameras to monitor the road ahead. Based on the detected environment, it assists the driver in controlling the steering and speed, building upon ACC functionality to keep the vehicle in its current lane.
- ICC only assists in keeping the vehicle within the current lane; it does not provide route guidance. When using ICC, the driver must always keep both hands on the steering wheel, take control when route adjustments are required, and pay attention to instrument cluster and audio alerts. The driver must be prepared to take immediate corrective action to ensure safe driving. If the driver's hands are removed from the steering wheel for a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.

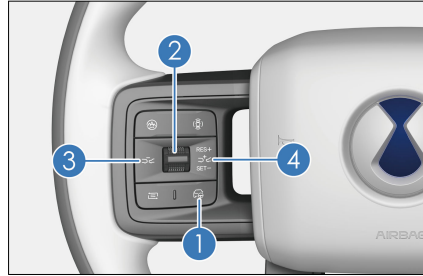
### Activating ICC



- ICC is available for activation when

 displays on the instrument.

### How to use

- Enable or disable ICC on the infotainment touchscreen →  . When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.



- Once activation conditions are met, press button ① to activate ICC.
-  displays on the instrument cluster when ICC is successfully activated. The target speed will be shown in  .

### Cruise control

- ICC assists the driver in keeping the vehicle centered in the lane, while supporting all ACC functions such as constant-speed cruising and following-distance control and all ACC operations such as adjusting target speed and following distance.

## WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and following distance according to local road regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ICC cannot detect all potential hazards so the driver must stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in

**! WARNING**

a timely manner if necessary. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel and remain aware of the surroundings, ready to take prompt control of the vehicle and take corrective measures.

- Do not over-rely on ICC to keep the vehicle in the lane. In certain situations, such as curves, the vehicle may drift towards or across lane markings. The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct lane position.
- The driver is supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and take control of the vehicle whenever necessary to ensure safe driving.

**Driver disengagement alert**

- If the driver's hands are removed from the steering wheel for a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.
- After the third-level alert is triggered, ICC will automatically deactivate, the vehicle will decelerate to a stop within




the current lane, and the hazard warning lights will be activated.

- The following actions can interrupt the automatic stop:
  - Turn off the double flash or turn on the left and right turn signals;
  - The driver steps on the accelerator pedal and turns the steering wheel at the same time;
  - The driver cancels the function through the steering wheel button/paddle;
  - Switch the gear to Park.
- If the third-level alert is triggered three times within the same ignition cycle, ICC will be disabled and can only be reactivated after the system is restarted.

**Exiting ICC**

- When ICC is active and the vehicle is moving, you can deactivate the system by pressing button ① or depressing the brake pedal. When the vehicle is stationary, the system can only be deactivated by pressing button ①.

**ICC indicators**

Indicator	Display status	Meaning
	Indicator on	ACC available but not activated
	Indicator on	ICC activated and operating
	Indicator on	ICC fault, unavailable

**! WARNING**

- The vehicle may not stabilize immediately upon ICC activation. The driver must keep both hands

**! WARNING**

on the steering wheel, stay aware of driving conditions, and be ready to take control at any time.

## **WARNING**

- Ensure surrounding conditions are safe before activating ICC. Avoid over-reliance on the system.
- The driver is supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and take control of the vehicle whenever necessary to ensure safe driving.
- ICC can be affected by weather conditions, lighting, and lane marking visibility. Performance degrades significantly in situations such as backlighting, sunset, snow covered roads, and roads with heavily worn lane markings.
- Do not use the ICC on winding roads, icy or slippery curves, or under poor weather conditions such as dense fog, heavy rain, or snow, which may obstruct the forward camera's view.
- Speed limit recognition could be misled by map updates, vehicle connectivity, and road conditions. The driver must always observe current road speed limits to ensure complies with traffic regulations. (Applicable only to vehicles with single-operation speed limit setting function.)

## **CAUTION**


- Activate ICC only after the vehicle is stable (steering wheel centered, vehicle aligned in lane center, and no sharp turns).
- ICC activation may fail when driving through intersections. Try activating the system after passing the intersection and entering a stable lane.

## Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)

### Function overview

- When TSR system detects that the speed limit value is inconsistent with the ACC target cruise speed set by the user, the system will prompt the user whether to adjust the target cruising speed to comply with the speed limit. When the user presses the SET- or RES + button, the target cruise speed will be adjusted to the speed limit value.
- The system's operating speed range is 30-150 km/h.

### Function settings

- ISLC setting: infotainment touchscreen →  → ADAS → Safety Assist → Traffic Sign Recognition → Intelligent Speed Limit Control.
  - ISLC is disabled by default.
  - When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
  - When TSR is disabled, ISLC also ceases to function.
  - When TSR is enabled, ISLC can be enabled or disabled depending on your needs.

## **CAUTION**

- ISLC integrates ACC and TSR. Therefore, the precautions of ACC and TSR must be followed when using ISLC.

## Safety Assist

### Forward Safety Assist

- Forward Collision Warning (FCW) uses the front mmWave radar and the camera to detect vehicles pedestrians and cyclists ahead. When detecting a risk of collision, the system alerts

the driver audibly and visually to take measures and avoid the collision risk.

### Function overview


Forward collision warning includes three subfunctions:

- **Safe distance warning:**
  - When the vehicle runs at about 65–150 km/h, the system monitors the road ahead in real time. If it detects the vehicle is following another vehicle at a short distance for a long time, it issues a safe distance warning.
  - The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, and a textual prompt is displayed to alert the driver.
- **Pre-warning:**
  - When the vehicle runs at about 15–150 km/h, if the system determines a collision risk with a target ahead, it issues a pre-warning. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.
  - The system gives a pre-warning visually and audibly. The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, a textual prompt is displayed, and the buzzer alarms.
- **Emergency warning:**
  - If the vehicle runs at about 15–150 km/h, if the driver does not respond appropriately after the pre-warning and the collision risk increases, the system issues an emergency warning. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.
  - The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, the buzzer alarms, a textual prompt is displayed, and there is a short braking warning.

### WARNING

- FCW is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in untimely warnings, missed alerts, or false alarms. FCW can not replace the driver's judgment and operation.

### Function settings

- You can set the FCW function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → ADAS → Safety Assist.
- The settings are defined as follows:
  - OFF: FCW is disabled.
  - Late: FCW is enabled and issues a late warning.
  - Moderate: FCW is enabled and issues a moderate warning.
  - Early: FCW is enabled and issues a early warning.

### REMINDER

- FCW is enabled with "Moderate" sensitivity as delivered from the factory. (If the function was not disabled in the last trip, the system retains the sensitivity setting. If the function was disabled in the last trip, the system resets to "Moderate" sensitivity at the next startup).

### System Limitations

- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:

- Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that approach from the front.
- Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path.
- Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes.
- Animals.
- Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles.
- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.
  - The hood or trunk is not closed properly or opened during driving.
  - The seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened when the vehicle is traveling. (Applicable only to models where AEB is not linked to seat belt status.)
  - The driver presses the brake pedal.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal too hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - The ESC function is disabled or ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Modifications to the vehicle, such as excessive paint thickness from repainting, application of films, adhesive tape, or decorative elements, may interfere with the performance of cameras or mmWave radars.
- The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In complex traffic situations, FCW may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- FCW may trigger unnecessary warning for water stains on the ground, road

shadows, manhole covers, iron plates, or road signs.

- If the vehicle runs for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may have temporary functional failure due to the limitation of detection characteristics, and the function will be automatically restored after leaving the current special road.

### **WARNING**

- Make sure to drive safely and observe surrounding traffic conditions. FCW is not a substitute for the driver's normal judgment and operation.
- If FCW gives an alarm, the driver must brake based on traffic conditions to decrease vehicle speed or steer away from obstacles.
- If the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead for too long, a safety distance warning will be given. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, collision may be unavoidable.
- As the pedestrian protection function cannot overcome the restrictions of some physical conditions, it may not fully work within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility to use brakes timely and effectively always lies in the driver. Whether a warning is issued in pedestrian protection scenarios depends on the actual situation.
- In pedestrian protection scenarios, the system cannot guarantee the complete

### **WARNING**

- prevention of accidents and severe injuries.
- The pedestrian protection function may trigger unwanted alarms in some complex situations, for example, on curved main roads.
- There may also be unnecessary alarm intervention in case of malfunctions in the pedestrian protection system, such as angular misalignment of the radar/multi-function video controller.
- Do not try to test FCW with carton, iron plate, dummy and other objects. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars in case of any of the following situations:
  - Dismantle the mmWave radar or front camera.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The vehicle experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use FCW based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

### **REMINDER**

- FCW cannot guarantee a warning in all cases. In complex traffic,

## REMINDER

the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.

- If the instrument cluster displays a message indicating that the radars or the front camera are dirty or blocked by foreign objects, clean them promptly as obstructions may cause sensor blindness. When the sensor is dirty or covered by foreign matter, the forward collision warning is disabled. After clearing, the forward collision warning is normal.

## Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)

### Function overview

- AEB uses the front mmWave radar or the camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists ahead. When detecting a risk of serious collision, the system automatically applies braking pressure to assist in collision avoidance or impact reduction.
- When the vehicle is traveling at about 4–150 km/h, the automatic emergency braking (AEB) system monitors the road ahead in real time. The system automatically applies braking if a collision risk with a vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected.
- During emergency braking, the instrument cluster displays a braking indicator, a prompt message with animation and text is shown, and an audible alarm is triggered simultaneously.

## WARNING


- AEB is a driver assistance feature not designed to prevent collisions

## WARNING

but rather to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating collisions.

- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking system efficiency, and tire status. Braking may occur incorrectly if the system misidentifies objects. AEB can not replace the driver's judgment and operation.

### Function settings

- Enable or disable AEB on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → ADAS → Safety Assist.

## WARNING

- It is strongly recommended that not to disable the AEB function. If it is disabled, the vehicle will be unable to assist the driver in reducing vehicle speed or avoiding/mitigating collisions.

## REMINDER

- AEB is enabled as delivered from the factory and remains on by default after each restart.

### System Limitations

- AEB is only activated when the vehicle speed exceeds 4 km/h. This feature is designed to reduce the risk of collision but does not guarantee collision avoidance at all speeds. Please note that the system does not guarantee that it can be triggered accurately under every working condition. Please drive carefully.

- Targets that may not be responded include, but are not limited to:
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that approach from the front.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path.
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes.
  - Animals.
  - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles.
- AEB may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - Poor road conditions such as pits, bumps, slippery surfaces, or steep slopes.
  - Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.
  - The hood or trunk is not closed properly or opened during driving.
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt or has unbuckled it.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal too hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - The ESC function is disabled or ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Modifications to the vehicle, such as excessive paint thickness from repainting, application of films, adhesive tape, or decorative elements, may interfere with the performance of cameras or mmWave radars.
- The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In complex traffic situations, AEB may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.

- System performance may be reduced in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Strong front bumper impact from accidents or other causes.
  - Excessive wear of brake pads or abnormal brake system.
  - Improperly inflated or worn out tires.
  - Unqualified tires installed.
  - Snow chains installed.
  - Use of a small spare tire or tire repair kit.
  - When the vehicle is heavily loaded.
  - The vehicle is in break-in period.
- AEB may trigger unnecessary braking for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates, or road signs.
- If the vehicle runs for a long time in special road conditions such as circular parking lot and tunnel, the front millimeter wave radar may have temporary functional failure due to the limitation of detection characteristics, and the function will be automatically restored after leaving the current special road.
- AEB cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes such as Trailer, Snow, Mud, Sand, or Mountain.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, AEB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

#### REMINDER

- The system will not activate AEB when the driver responds to an emergency warning by steering, accelerating, or braking.

#### REMINDER

- AEB cannot guarantee a braking in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- If the instrument cluster displays a message indicating that the radars or the front camera are dirty or blocked by foreign objects, clean them promptly as obstructions may cause sensor blindness. IF AEB is off because that sensor is dirty or covered with foreign objects, clear the sensor to make it function normally.

#### WARNING

- Be sure to drive safely and keep eyes on the surrounding traffic conditions. Under no circumstances shall AEB be used as a substitute for the driver's judgement and operation.
- As the pedestrian protection function cannot overcome the restrictions of some physical conditions, it may not fully work within the speed range specified by the system. Therefore, the responsibility to use brakes timely and effectively always lies in the driver. Whether a braking is issued in pedestrian protection scenarios depends on the actual situation.
- In pedestrian protection scenarios, the system cannot guarantee the complete prevention of accidents and severe injuries.
- The pedestrian protection function may trigger unwanted braking in some complex

## WARNING

situations, for example, on curved main roads.

- There may also be unnecessary braking intervention in case of malfunctions in the pedestrian protection system, such as angular misalignment of the radar/multi-function video controller.
- Do not attempt to test the PEB system on your own using objects such as carton, iron plate, dummy, etc. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars in case of any of the following situations:
  - Dismantle the mmWave radar or front camera.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The vehicle experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

### Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)


#### Function overview

- When the vehicle is traveling at around 10–20 km/h, the front cross traffic alert (FCTA) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front

bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system issues a warning to alert the driver.

- During a warning event, the system alerts the driver through an audible beep from the buzzer, radar-side rendering on the instrument cluster, flashing of the instrument cluster indicators and front-row ambient lights, and flashing warning lights on the side mirrors.

#### Function settings

- Enable or disable FCTA on the infotainment touchscreen →  → ADAS → Safety Assist.

## REMINDER

- The function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

#### System Limitations

- FCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow, heavy fog, etc.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Drive.
  - The hood and trunk of the front compartment are not closed properly or the hood and trunk of the front

compartment are opened during driving.

- The driver is not wearing a seat belt or has unbuckled it.
- The driver turns the steering wheel sharply or rapidly.
- The accelerator pedal is deeply pressed.
- The brake pedal is pressed hard and then released.
- System initialization has not been complete yet.
- The system is in the process of starting (for example, vehicle is just powered on or restarting).
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- The system may miss, misidentify, or delay obstacle detection due to factors such as front obstructions, target type, or appearance timing. This could result in no warning, false warning, or delayed warning. Such scenarios include but are not limited to:
  - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may not be able to issue adequate warning.
  - The mmWave radars on both side of the front bumper are blocked by dirt, snow, or other obstructions.
  - Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
  - The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.

- The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
- The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow.
- MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
- The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
- Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.
- Influence of vibration or collision on mmWave radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

 **WARNING**

- FCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTA to fail or lead to late warning.

### WARNING

- Use FCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTA warnings may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

## Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB)

### Function overview

- When the vehicle is traveling at 0–5 km/h or 10–20 km/h, the front cross traffic braking (FCTB) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras on both sides of the front bumper. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system applies automatic braking to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating the collision.
- During braking, the instrument cluster issues warnings via text and visual prompts, rendered according to the radar detection side and the target object.


### WARNING

- FCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking system efficiency, and tire status. Braking may occur incorrectly if the system misidentifies objects.
- Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take

### WARNING

necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.

### Function settings

- Enable or disable FCTB on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → ADAS → Safety Assist.

### REMINDER

- FCTB is active only when warning and braking are both enabled.
- The function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

### System Limitations

- FCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- FCTB may not operate or disengage during a braking in certain conditions, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow, heavy fog, etc.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
  - The vehicle is not in Drive.
  - The hood and trunk of the front compartment are not closed properly or the hood and trunk of the front compartment are opened during driving.

- The driver is not wearing a seat belt or has unbuckled it.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel sharply or rapidly.
  - The accelerator pedal is deeply pressed.
  - The brake pedal is pressed hard and then released.
  - System initialization has not been complete yet.
  - The system is in the process of starting (for example, vehicle is just powered on or restarting).
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to front occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no braking, false braking, or delayed braking. This includes but is not limited to:
    - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may not be able to brake.
    - The mmWave radars on both side of the front bumper are blocked by dirt, snow, or other obstructions.
    - Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
    - The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
    - The target vehicle is obscured.
    - The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
    - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow.
- MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - When the vehicle is heavily loaded.
  - Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.
  - Influence of vibration or collision on mmWave radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
  - Unnecessary braking may occur in bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
  - To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, FCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

 **WARNING**

- FCTB is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTB to fail or lead to late warning.

## WARNING

- Use FCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTB may delay braking, fail to brake, or brake unnecessarily due to system limitations.


### Traffic sign recognition (TSR)

- The traffic sign recognition system identifies speed limit information on the road through the camera or map. When the speed limit icon on the instrument cluster lights up, it means the vehicle speed should be within range.

### Function overview

- TSR contains two sub-functions: speed limit information function (SLIF) and intelligent speed assistance (ISA).
- Speed limit information function (SLIF): The system detects road speed limit information through cameras or maps and displays the corresponding speed limit icon on the instrument cluster.
- Intelligent speed assistance (ISA): When the vehicle speed exceeds the detected speed limit, the speed limit icon on the instrument cluster flashes to remind the driver to stay within the speed limit.

### Function settings

- Enable or disable TSR and subfunctions on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → ADAS → Safety Assist → Traffic Sign Recognition.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- When TSR is off, neither TSR or any related feature is enabled.

- When TSR is on, SLIF and ISA can be switched on or off according to needs.
- Audible alert for speed limit change: enable/disable an audible alert when the detected speed limit changes.
- Intelligent speed assistance (ISA): enable/disable the visual alert when the vehicle speed exceeds the detected speed limit.

## REMINDER

- The TSR system identifies speed limit signs, not any other traffic signs, and does not involve in the active control of the vehicle. Please drive responsibly.
- The view of front camera cannot be blocked by objects or exposed to strong light. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If not, have the system repaired in a timely manner.
- If TSR malfunctions and becomes unavailable, have the system repaired immediately.

### System Limitations

- As a driver assistance system, TSR may not respond to all traffic, weather, visibility, road conditions.
- The detection of speed limit signs is easily interfered by the environment. Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include but are not limited to:
  - The front windshield is dirty or fogged, or the front camera is blocked.
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel.

- Unclear, distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked or covered speed limit signs
- Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days.
- Weight or width limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations
- The system operation may be affected if the windshield within the camera visual field is cracked, if the glass is dyed or inadequately coated; or if any reflecting object is placed on the dashboard or any other object interferes with camera sight.

### WARNING

- TSR only serves to alert for speeding and cannot assist in speed control. Do not be over-reliant on it.
- TSR is only an assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting the TSR function. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and respond in a timely manner to control the vehicle.

### CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear speed limit signs
  - Incomplete speed limit signs.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late activation of the function include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.

### CAUTION

- The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
- TSR may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself when:
  - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

## Side Safety Assist

### Lane Departure Assist (LDA)

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from its current lane, LDA alerts the driver or assists in steering the vehicle back into the lane.


### Function overview

- LDA contains two sub-functions: Lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP). The system's operating speed range is 60–150 km/h.
- Lane departure warning (LDW): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in red), steering wheel

vibration, or an audible alert to help reduce lane departure risks.

- Lane departure prevention (LDP): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel rotation or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in blue) and applies steering assistance to guide the vehicle back into the lane, helping reduce lane departure risks.

### Function settings

- You can enable or disable the function the infotainment touchscreen →  → ADAS → Safety Assist → Lane Departure Assist.
- LDA functions are disabled as delivered from the factory and defaults to the previous setting every time when the vehicle is started.
- The LDA alert mode is set to steering wheel vibration by default and can be changed to Sound, Vibration, or Sound + Vibration. The system will store the selected setting.
- Lane departure sensitivity: Default sensitivity level is set as "Moderate". In case of fatigue driving, the system automatically switches to "High". Restarting the vehicle restores sensitivity to "Moderate".
- **OFF:** no LDA functions active.
- **Warning:** only LDW enabled, no steering intervention.
- **Correction:** only LDP enabled, steering intervention applied.
- **All activated:** Activating both the lane departure warning (LDW) and lane

departure prevention (LDP) at the same time.

- The system restores the default settings when the vehicle is started.


### REMINDER

- LDA is suppressed if a turn signal is used and the vehicle changes lane as indicated by the turn signal.
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings, LDA will be suppressed.
- LDP will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- LDA is suppressed if any door, the hood, or the trunk lid is open or faulty.
- The function will temporarily suspend operation if any object blocks the camera or if it is exposed to strong lights. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If not, have the system repaired in a timely manner.
- While LDP is activated, the driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, otherwise the system will audibly prompt the driver to take over the steering wheel. When LDP is active and the driver does not intervene, the system monitors correction activations within a 180-second rolling cycle. During the first activation, no audible alert will be issued within 5 seconds. At the second activation, the system provides an audible alert to remind the driver to take control. From the third activation onward,



## REMINDER

the duration of each audible alert will increase by at least 10 seconds compared with the previous activation.

- When LDA fails,  is displayed on the instrument cluster with an audible alert and a prompt message. Have the system repaired immediately.

## System Limitations


- LDA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The detection of lane markings is easily interfered by the environment. Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include but are not limited to:
  - Dirty or fogged front windshield, or blocked front camera
  - Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane markings obscured by direct sunlight or tree shadows.
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days.
  - Confusing or unclear lane markings, for example when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction.
  - Rapid changes in lane markings, such as lane splits, crossings, or merges.

- Lane markings are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred or covered by dirt or snow.
- Lanes are too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, lane markings change suddenly (for example, on a ramp or exit), or in situations of complex line arrangements.
- The vehicle is driving on steep slopes or sharp curves, following too closely behind another vehicle, or when the vehicle ahead blocks the lane markings.
- The system may be unable to correct in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Poor road conditions, for example after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - Excessive or insufficient lateral deviation speed of the vehicle.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance.
- The system operation may be affected if the windshield within the camera visual field is cracked, if the glass is dyed or inadequately coated; or if any reflecting object is placed on the dashboard or any other object interferes with camera sight.



## CAUTION

- It is recommended to turn LDA off, including but not limited to:
  - Driving in a sporty style
  - Severe weather conditions
  - On uneven roads

 **CAUTION**

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear lane lines
  - Incomplete lane lines
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late activation of the function include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked;
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The front camera is partially or completely blocked.
  - LDW and LDP cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes such as Trailer, Snow, Mud, Sand, or Mountain.
- LDA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
  - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

 **WARNING**

- For your safety, do not test LDA functions intentionally.

 **WARNING**

- Do not be over-reliant on LDA functions. LDW only serves to alert for lane departure and cannot assist in steering control. LDP only assists in returning the vehicle back to its original lane when lane departure happens and cannot control the vehicle to remain in the center of the lane. Do not rely on LDP to avoid side collisions.
- LDA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. The driver must stay aware of the surroundings and take necessary control measures promptly if the function is suppressed or deactivated.
- Use LDA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

**Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)**

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from the current roadway or lane and there is a collision risk with a vehicle approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane or with oncoming traffic in the opposite lane, ELKA assists in steering correction to help avoid or mitigate a potential collision.

**Function overview**

- Emergency lane keeping assist (ELKA) detects lane markings and road edges ahead with sensors such as cameras and detect vehicles in adjacent lanes with corner mmWave radars. If the system determines that the driver unintentionally departs from the road or is at risk of doing so, and there is a collision risk with a detected target vehicle, it assists in steering correction

to help the vehicle stay in its current lane. This helps prevent unintentional road departures and reduces the risk of collision with oncoming or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes.

- ELKA operating speed rang:


Rear traffic emergency avoidance: 72–150km/h.

Oncoming traffic emergency avoidance: 60–150 km/h.

Curbside traffic emergency avoidance: 60–150 km/h.

### Function settings

You can enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping

 → ADAS → Safety Assist → Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA).


- ELKA is enabled as delivered from the factory and will remain enabled after each restart.
- **OFF:** ELKA will not operate.
- **On:** ELKA is active.

### REMINDER

- ELKA will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- If the turn signal is activated and the driver steers in the indicated direction, ELKA will be suppressed when the vehicle is departing toward the road edge or toward the opposite lane with oncoming traffic present.
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings or the road edge, ELKA will be suppressed.
- If there is a risk of deviation from the road or side collision but

### REMINDER

corrective steering could result in a collision with an obstacle along the new path, ELKA will not intervene.

- The view of front camera cannot be blocked by objects or exposed to strong light. The function recovers once conditions return to normal. If not, have the system repaired in a timely manner.
- If a malfunction occurs, the icon  will illuminate in the instrument cluster and ELKA will be unavailable. have the system repaired immediately.

### System Limitations

- ELKA's detection of lane markings, road edges, and obstacles may be impaired under certain conditions, resulting in no intervention, inappropriate intervention, or reduced performance. Situations include but are not limited to:
  - Dirty or fogged front windshield, or blocked front camera
  - Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane markings obscured by direct sunlight or tree shadows.
  - Unidentifiable road edge with grass, soil, or curb.
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days
  - Confusing or unclear lane markings, for example when old and new lines

- overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction.
- Rapid changes in lane markings, such as lane splits, crossings, or merges.
- Lane markings are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred or covered by dirt or snow.
- Lanes are too narrow, the number of lanes increases or decreases, lane markings change suddenly (for example, on a ramp or exit), or in situations of complex line arrangements.
- The vehicle is driving on steep slopes or sharp curves, following too closely behind another vehicle, or when the vehicle ahead blocks the lane markings.
- The system may miss, misidentify, or delay obstacle detection due to factors such as the type, position, timing, or occlusion of obstacles, resulting in delayed or failed intervention. Scenarios include:
  - Large vehicles ahead block the detection area of the radar or camera.
  - Obstacles move quickly or are at close range into the front or side of the vehicle.
  - Fences, water barriers, traffic cones, or other obstacles in the vehicle's front lateral or rear lateral areas that the system may fail to detect.
  - Obstacles block the radar or camera's detection area, such as vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in the front lateral or rear lateral areas.
  - Obstacles in the front lateral or rear lateral areas with low visual contrast against the surrounding environment.
- Targets in the front lateral or rear lateral areas that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
- Targets in the front lateral or rear lateral are located on a curve.
- Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.
- The system may be unable to correct in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Poor road conditions, for example after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - Excessive or insufficient lateral deviation speed of the vehicle.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance.
- The system operation may be affected if the windshield within the camera visual field is cracked, if the glass is dyed or inadequately coated; or if any reflecting object is placed on the dashboard or any other object interferes with camera sight.



#### CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Pedestrians, animals, and specialty or specially-shaped vehicles.
  - Unclear or incomplete lane lines.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late alarm include but are not limited to:



## CAUTION

- Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
- The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
- Partially or completely blocked camera lens.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - ELKA cannot be activated when the vehicle is in special driving modes such as Trailer, Snow, Mud, Sand, or Mountain.
- ELKA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
  - The vehicle is at an intersection.
  - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.



## WARNING

- For your safety, do not test the ELKA function intentionally.
- The ELKA function only assists in steering correction to return the vehicle to its original lane when there is a collision risk due to unintended road or lane departure. It cannot continuously control the vehicle to remain in the center of the lane. Do not rely on ELKA to avoid side collisions.
- ELKA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found.
- Use ELKA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

## Blind Spot Detection (BSD)

- When a target in the driver's blind spot is detected, the system gives a warning to remind the driver of safe driving. The function is enabled by default.

## Function overview


- The blind spot detection (BSD) system uses sensors such as radars to detect targets such as vehicles or cyclists in the driver's blind spot. When the vehicle is traveling at about 15–150 km/h, the side mirror indicator flashes if BSD detects a target in the blind area. If the driver toggles the turn signal lever at this time, the side mirror indicator on the target side, the instrument indicator, and the light-colored radar wave on the same side of the instrument will flash, with an

audible alarm given to warn the driver of a possible collision.

#### REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror lens, as it may interfere with the normal operation of BSD.
- The driver should ensure the normal operation of the BSD system, keeping the BSD radar sensors in good condition. For example, if they are covered in dirt, snow or other obstructions, they need to be cleared right away.
- BSD will not operate in the travel with trailer mode.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the side BSD radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.

#### Function settings

- Enable or disable BSD on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → ADAS → Safety Assist.
- The function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

#### System Limitations

- BSD is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- Situations where BSD and related features may work improperly or deactivate themselves include but are not limited to:

- Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
- Driving on sharp curves.
- The vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h.
- The vehicle is overtaking the preceding vehicle or encountering an oncoming vehicle.
- The system is in the process of starting (for example, vehicle is just powered on or restarting).
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions such as glare or reflections may lead to false obstacle detections by the system. For instance, tracks, gantries, or reflective road studs could be misclassified as obstacles, resulting in an unintended warning.

#### WARNING

- When the BSD system gives a warning, the driver should avoid lane changes toward the warning-indicated side. The driver should ensure that lane changes are made in a safe manner at all times.
- BSD can not replace interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an

## **WARNING**

accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

### **Door Open Warning (DOW)**

- When detecting a risk of collision when opening the door, the system gives a warning to alert the driver, reducing the possibility of collision and improving safety. The function is enabled by default.

### **Function overview**

- The door open warning (DOW) system detects targets on both sides of the vehicle such as vehicles and cyclists using sensors such as radars. When the vehicle is stationary with power-on or drives slowly at a speed below 2 km/h, the alarm indicator on the side mirror lights up when DOW detects that there is a risk of collision when opening the door. The indicator remains on until DOW is deactivated, alerting the driver to the risk. If the driver opens the door at this time, the indicator on the corresponding side flashes, accompanied by an audio prompt, reminding the driver to pay attention to the collision risk.


## **REMINDER**

- Do not attach any objects to the side mirror lens, as it may interfere with the normal operation of DOW.
- The driver should ensure the proper functioning of DOW and maintain the condition of the radar installation areas in good condition. Any obstructions such as mud, snow, or other coverings should be promptly removed.

## **REMINDER**

- In towing mode, DOW does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of the DOW's side assist radars, which will degrade the system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.

### **Function settings**

- Enable or disable DOW on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → ADAS → Safety Assist.
- The function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

### **System Limitations**

- DOW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- Situations where DOW and related features may work improperly or deactivate themselves include but are not limited to:
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
  - The vehicle stops at a turning point or near a wall.
  - There is a large vehicle behind the vehicle, which blocks the radar detection area of the vehicle.
  - There are small targets or slow moving targets.
  - The target speed is too high or there is turning behavior, such as the target vehicle changing lanes to the rear of the vehicle, or other

vehicles suddenly changing lanes and entering the detection area behind the vehicle.

- The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions such as glare or reflections may lead to false obstacle detections by the system. For instance, tracks, gantries, or reflective road studs could be misclassified as obstacles, resulting in an unintended warning.

#### **WARNING**

- DOW cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles.
- DOW cannot replace the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors or manual visual inspections by drivers and passengers. Active observation of the door opening environment before getting off is the most effective measure and responsibility for drivers and passengers to ensure personal safety.
- DOW may give a warning when there is no risk of collision. Stay alert and monitor traffic to decide if action is needed.
- DOW can only prompt the collision risk through warning, but cannot avoid the collision accident.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers

#### **WARNING**

around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

### Rear Safety Assist

#### Rear Collision Warning (RCW)

- The system issues a warning to the driver when a collision from behind is detected while moving forward. The function is enabled by default.

#### Function overview

- When the vehicle is traveling below 150 km/h, the rear collision warning (RCW) system monitors the rear driving environment in real time using sensors such as radars and cameras. The system issues a warning when a rear-end collision risk is detected.
- During warning, the interior ambient lights and the front left/right ambient lights on the corresponding side are steady on, and the red area at the rear of the vehicle image on the instrument cluster is highlighted. In addition to issuing a warning to the driver on the instrument cluster, the vehicle simultaneously activates the hazard warning lights to alert following drivers of a potential collision risk.
- When reversing, the RCW system does not work.

#### **WARNING**


- The RCW system is a driver assistance feature. Its activation

## WARNING

may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in untimely warnings, missed alerts, or false alarms. RCW cannot replace the driver's driving and judgment.

- The driver must ensure the normal operation of RCW, keeping its radars in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.
- In towing mode, RCW does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect the calibration of the RCW's rear assist radars, which will degrade the system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

### Function settings

- Enable or disable RCW on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → ADAS → Safety Assist.
- The function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

### System Limitations

- RCW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The RCW system only takes effect when the vehicle is stationary or moving forward. When reversing, the RCW system does not work.

- The system may fail to issue a warning in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Poor visibility conditions such as rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, etc.
  - Any door, the hood, or the trunk lid is open or faulty.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel, or the vehicle has a risk of lateral instability (such as excessive steering wheel angle or high steering rate).
  - The driver brakes hard.
  - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations (including but not limited to), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or experience delayed detection of obstacles due to rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, timing, or other factors, which may result in no warning or delayed warning.
  - Poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - There is a large vehicle behind the vehicle, which blocks the detection area of the radars or cameras of the vehicle.
  - There are situations where the vehicle's rear is obstructed, or the obstacle has low contrast with the forward visibility environment, leading to unclear, inaccurate, or incomplete detection of the obstacle.
  - The vehicle or the rear target is in a curve.

- The vehicle's rear has a target that can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
- High-speed objects, such as fast-moving vehicles or sudden rear-approaching vehicles.
- The vehicle is reversing.
- Other conditions outside the detection capability or range of the radar or camera.
- Poor lighting conditions such as glare or reflections may lead to false obstacle detections by the system. For instance, tracks, gantries, or reflective road studs could be misclassified as obstacles, resulting in an unintended warning.

#### **WARNING**

- The RCW system is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay. RCW only provides reminder assistance and cannot replace the driver's driving and judgment. Do not rely heavily on the warning issued by the RCW system. RCW cannot replace the driver's driving and judgment.
- RCW can only remind the collision risk through the reminder, and can not avoid the collision accident or reduce the collision injury. When the vehicle issues a warning, the driver should take immediate safety measures to prevent the vehicle from further danger.
- RCW may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

#### **WARNING**

- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

### Rear cross traffic alert (RCTA)

#### Function overview

- When the vehicle is reversing, the RCTA system detects the vehicles traveling in the blind spot at the back. The system gives a warning when it is detected that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the rear lateral crossing vehicle, pedestrians or riders. The operating speed range of the rear lateral collision warning system is 0-15 km/h.
- When the system gives a warning, the instrument cluster displays light gray radar waves on the corresponding side of the vehicle, textual prompts, audible alarm and voice broadcast, and triggers target object rendering to alert the driver of potential risks.


#### **WARNING**

- RCTA is a driver assistance feature. Its activation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, obstacle type, distance to the obstacle, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in untimely warnings, missed alerts, or false alarms. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take

## **WARNING**

necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found.

### Function settings

- Enable or disable RCTA on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → ADAS → Safety Assist.

## **REMINDER**

- The function is enabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

### System Limitations

- RCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow, heavy fog, etc.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse gear.
  - System initialization has not been complete yet.
  - The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
  - Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to rear occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no warning or delayed warning. This includes but is not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle drives at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow. Radar coming off, loosely installed, or blocked; The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
  - The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- In towing mode, RCTA does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on mmWave radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

- Unnecessary warning may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

### WARNING

- RCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found. The driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use RCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTA may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

## Rear cross traffic braking (RCTB)

### Function overview


- Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB) is used if the vehicle meets another vehicle crossing the road when leaving a vertical or slanted parking space. It gives a warning and helps the driver brake to prevent collision, especially when the visual field of the driver is blocked by the vehicle parking beside. The operating speed range of the rear lateral impact braking system is 0-10 km/h.
- When braking, the instrument cluster displays light gray radar waves on the corresponding side of the vehicle and

textual prompts to alert the driver of potential risks.

### WARNING

- RCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking system efficiency, and tire status. Braking may occur incorrectly if the system misidentifies objects. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found.

### Function settings

- Enable or disable RCTB on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → ADAS → Safety Assist.

### REMINDER

- The function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

### System Limitations

- RCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to brake in certain scenarios, including but not limited to the following:

- Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
- Poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, rain, snow, heavy fog, etc.
- The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
- The vehicle is not in Reverse gear.
- The accelerator pedal is deeply pressed.
- System initialization has not been complete yet.
- The system is in the process of starting, for example when vehicle is just powered on or restarting.
- Scenarios listed under general system limitations.
- The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In the following situations, the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or delay detecting obstacles due to rear occlusion, target type, position, timing, or other factors, leading to no braking or delayed braking. This includes but is not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle drives at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow. Radar coming off, loosely installed, or blocked; The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, four-wheelers, pedestrian, electric bicycles, motorcycle, or non-standard vehicles, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
- The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- In towing mode, RCTB does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on mmWave radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may occur in bright or reflective conditions due to puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, RCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

 **WARNING**

- RCTB is only used as a driving assistance function, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation and take necessary measures to control the vehicle in time when danger is found.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTB to fail or lead to late braking.


 **WARNING**




- Use RCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTB may be delayed, missed, or triggered unnecessarily due to system limitations.

## Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC)

- Intelligent high beam control (IHBC) is a driver assistance function that helps the driver use the high beams correctly in the dark. In the dark, the system switches from low beam to high beam to provide the driver with the maximum field of vision. When an oncoming vehicle is detected, the system automatically switches from high beam to low beam to prevent dazzling other drivers. It also automatically switches to low beam in urban areas or under other conditions.

### Function settings

- Enable or disable IHBC on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → Light → Exterior Light → IHBC.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- IHBC indicators:

IHBC standby	IHBC activated	IHBC fault
		


### IHBC on/off conditions

- Auto activation conditions:
  - The light switch is in the AUTO position.

- The vehicle speed is greater than 35 km/h and less than 140 km/h.
- The area in front of the vehicle is dark.
- Auto off conditions:
  - During daylight or nighttime conditions, the system automatically suppresses the high beam when sufficient ambient lighting is detected on the road.
  - At night, the system automatically suppresses the high beam when other vehicles or pedestrians are detected within a certain range in front of the vehicle.
  - At night, turning on turn signal suppresses the high beam. After the turn signal is turned off, the high beam is activated again if conditions are met.

 **REMINDER**

- System malfunctions or lighting system failures can affect the IHBC function.
- Activating high beam manually will suppress IHBC function.

 **CAUTION**

- The IHBC system is an auxiliary light control function, but it cannot completely replace the driver's judgement. The driver must observe road regulations and actively switch between high and low beams according to road condition changes at all times.
- In case there is a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, it is recommended to go to an authorized dealer or service provider for sensor calibration



## CAUTION

so as to avoid affecting system performance.



## WARNING

- Due to a variety of environmental factors and conditions, the intelligent high beam may be triggered or disabled by mistake. Typical scenarios include, but are not limited to:
  - The weather, such as fog, rain or snow, is extremely terrible for driving.
  - There are traffic participants with poor lighting (such as pedestrians and bicycles), railways or waterways nearby, or wild animals on the roads.
  - There are strongly reflective objects around, such as traffic signs on highways and water reflection on the road surface.
  - The front windshield is dirty, covered in mist, or blocked by stickers or decorations.

## Head-up Display (HUD)\*

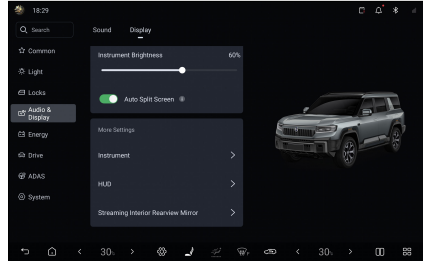
Head-Up Display (HUD): The head-up display (HUD) function projects important information, including vehicle speed, navigation, speed limit, ACC, lane departure, and BSD into the driver's field of view on the front windshield. It improves driving safety by preventing the driver from frequently changing the focus of their eyes.

### How to Use

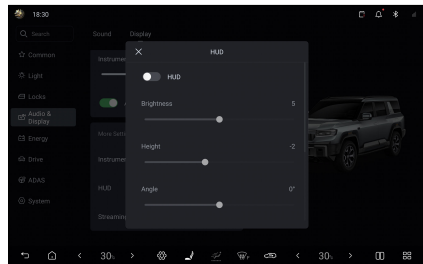
- The user can enable or disable the head-up display function by the infotainment touchscreen → →

**Audio&Display** → **HUD** or by saying "Hi, BYD, open the head-up display (or HUD) " or "Close the head-up display (or HUD) ".

- By factory default, the switch is toggled on and a HUD image is displayed. When the switch is toggled off, no HUD image is displayed. The system defaults to the previous settings when the vehicle restarts.

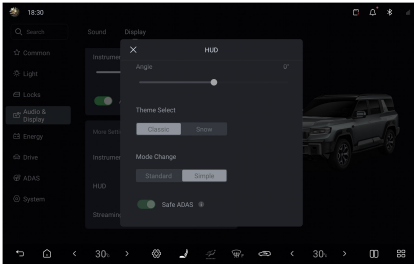


- Height adjusting: adjust the height of HUD virtual image in between -10 and 10. A total of 21 values are available, and the default value is 0.
- Brightness adjusting: adjust the brightness of HUD virtual image in between 0 and 10. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 5.
- Angle adjusting: adjust the angle of HUD virtual image. A total of 11 values are available, and the default value is 0°.



- Mode Setting: select Classic (default setting) or Snow mode according to the environment of the vehicle.


- Mode switching Select standard or concise based on user preference. The system defaults to concise.
- Settings optional for display: safe driving assistance or navigation. They are enabled by default. Tap the button to select the setting for HUD display. Tap the button again to deselect and close the item.



### CAUTION

- Make sure that the head-up display is unobstructed.
- Wipe the dust on the HUD dust-proof board with a soft cotton cloth or paper towel.
- Make sure no water or other liquid flow into the opening of the head-up display.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring

- The direct tire pressure monitoring system is an auxiliary system that monitors tire pressure in real time to improve vehicle safety and comfort and reduce tire wear and energy consumption due to insufficient tire pressure.
- You can navigate to the driving information bar by pressing the  button on the steering wheel and to the tire pressure display screen by pressing the button again.

## Tire pressure system alarm

- When the pressure of any tire is lower than 75% of the standard tire pressure and the system is running, the tire pressure fault warning light lights up and the tire pressure value turns yellow. In that case, it is recommended to stop the vehicle to check for slow air leakage and inflate the tire to the correct pressure value.
- When the temperature of any tire is above 85°C for three consecutive minutes, the tire pressure system gives a high temperature alarm, and the temperature value of the corresponding tire turns yellow, it is recommended to stop the vehicle and wait for the tire temperature to decrease before further driving.
- When the system is running, if a fault occurs, the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on after flashing, and the message "No Signal" or "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster. In that case, check the tire pressure monitoring module, and check for any surrounding electromagnetic source nearby. If the alarm persists for a long time, please contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.




### WARNING


- The system does not stop vehicle traveling in the event of abnormal tire pressure. Therefore, each time before driving, ensure that the tire pressure conforms to the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive, otherwise vehicle damage or personal injuries can occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tire pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light

 **WARNING**

comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and reduce vehicle speed, pull it over to the curb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tire pressure can cause permanent damage to tires and increase the likelihood of tire scrapping. Serious tire damage can lead to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

 **CAUTION**

- The running time of the tire pressure monitoring module is related to the daily travel distance and other factors.
- The monitoring module regularly transmits tire pressure and other information to the display. Therefore, if the tire pressure drops suddenly or there is a flat tire, the monitoring module will not transmit data to the display until the next monitoring. In this case, the vehicle may be out of control. If there is a flat tire and monitoring fails to inform, or if you feel that there are some tire problems, stop driving immediately instead of waiting for the display to signal an alarm.
- Incorrect installation of the tire pressure monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tires. It is recommended that the monitoring module be installed and replaced by professional technicians from a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider according to the installation instructions.
- Since tire pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate

 **CAUTION**

or deflate the tires according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tire pressure values.

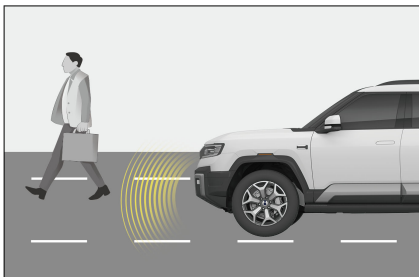
- The tire pressure monitoring system may be disturbed by non-DENZA approved electrical accessories on the vehicle. This is not a tire pressure system failure.
- The tire pressure system needs to be matched again after replacement of wheel rims or spare tires\* or tire rotations. Go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to re-match the tire pressure.

## Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)

### Function overview

The Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS) refers to the broadcast to pedestrians near the vehicle when it is traveling at low speed.

- When driving forward:
  - The broadcast volume increases with vehicle speed in the range of  $0 \text{ km/h} < V \leq 20 \text{ km/h}$ .
  - The broadcast volume decreases with vehicle speed in the range of  $20 \text{ km/h} < V \leq 30 \text{ km/h}$ .
  - At speeds above 30 km/h, the broadcast sound stops automatically.



- The vehicle makes a continuous and balanced prompt sound when moving in reverse.

### Disabling/Enabling the system

- To turn on or off (not supported in some regions) the engine sound simulator, slide down from the top of the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen.

### WARNING

- The AVAS pause switch can only be used if there are no other road users within a short distance, and no audio prompt is needed considering the surroundings (for example, in a traffic jam or on the motorway). As long as pedestrians may appear around the vehicle, the AVAS needs to be turned on.
- If the vehicle is running at low speed with AVAS turned off, it is unable to alert pedestrians to the vehicle approaching, decreasing vehicle safety.
- If the AVAS sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, shift into Reverse and reverse slowly to check whether the sound can be heard. If it is confirmed that there is no sound, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider to deal with it.

## Around View Monitor (AVM)

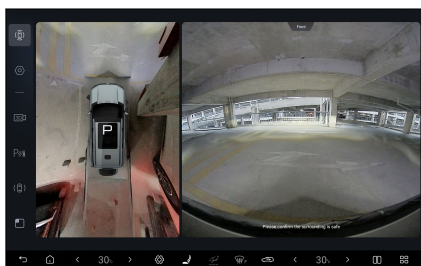
Panoramic image system, namely 360 image system, provides omni-directional environmental images around the vehicle, assists the driver to observe the situation around the vehicle, reduces the blind area of vision, and improves the driving experience of reversing, parking, narrow road traffic and other scenes.


- AVM activation method:
  - To access the panoramic view, press the button on the steering wheel.
  - Tap the vehicle view button on the infotainment touchscreen to enter the panoramic view.
  - Shifting to "R" can forcibly start the AVM system.



- Enter the panoramic view interface through the driver seat intelligent voice "Hi, BYD, open the panoramic view".
- Turn on "D gear trigger" button on AVM setting interface so that AVM can be enabled through "D" gear.
- Tap the front, rear, right, or left area of the vehicle icon on the left. View of the selected area is displayed in the image section on the right.
- In the single front and rear views, double-tap the image section to switch













to a 180° perspective displayed in full screen.



- Tap the radar icon  in the AVM system to enable the radar display, and tap it again to disable. When the radar display is enabled, an obstacle warning is displayed as it is approached.
- Transparent around view: Tap the transparent vehicle button to

switch between transparent and non-transparent vehicle images.

- 3D around view: Tap the 3D around view button (the button turns gray) to access this view.
- 3D around view: Tap the 3D around view button (the button lights up) to access this view.
- Settings: AVM settings include body color switching, radar triggering around view, steering linkage, completely transparent speed limit, D gear triggering and other options. Click the body color switching to switch the body color of the vehicle model in the AVM application and the body map in the overhead view. Steering linkage triggers the corresponding perspective based on scene adaptation.

AVM Icons	Function Instructions
	Around view of non-transparent vehicle
	Around view of transparent vehicle
	3D around view
	2D around view
	Front view
	Rear view
	Left view
	Right view
	2D view of two directions
	2D front view of two directions
	2D rear view of two directions
	3D transparency engine

- When the vehicle is just started, the image before last power-off is displayed for the transparent around view. Foreign bodies shown may be

inconsistent with the actual ones in the underbody and surrounding blind areas. The underbody image update will begin only after the vehicle has

started to move and will be complete when the vehicle has been driven beyond its length.

 **WARNING**

- This system uses wide-angle fish-eye cameras, so some displayed objects may be different from the actual ones in shape.
- The AVM system is only to be used for parking/driving assistance. It is not safe to rely solely on this system to park or drive the vehicle, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the vehicle. Be sure to observe the surroundings in other ways during the parking/driving process to avoid accidents.
- When the side mirrors are not extended in place, do not use the AVM system; and when the AVM system is used for operating the vehicle, ensure that all doors are closed.
- The distance to an object displayed on the around view screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.
- Cameras are installed above the front grille, the lower parts of the side mirrors, and the rear license plate. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.
- To prevent affecting camera performance, avoid spraying directly on the cameras when washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.

 **WARNING**

- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the around view button or shift into Reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the around view screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.
- When the vehicle is moving slowly, the transparent AVM function is affected by speed changes or multiple stops, causing misalignment between the images below the vehicle and those outside.

 **WARNING**

- Do not rely solely on the AVM system while driving, as it may not accurately detect objects or pedestrians in approaching areas. It is necessary to use all the rearview mirrors to make a comprehensive judgment.

## Parking Assist


- During vehicle parking brake, the parking assist system detects obstacles by sensors, and prompts the driver with the proximity of obstacles by an image on the infotainment touchscreen and a speaker alarm.
- The parking assist system helps with reversing. Pay attention to the environment behind and around the vehicle during reversing.

- When you reverse the vehicle, a reversing image will be displayed on the infotainment touchscreen automatically.
- For your driving safety, when the reversing image is displayed, all buttons will be disabled except some volume and calls-related buttons.
- After reversing ends, the interface will be restored.

### CAUTION

- When the vehicle speed is over 10 km/h, the parking assist system will cease to operate.
- Do not place any objects within the sensors' working range.
- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor area with water or steam.

### Parking Sensor Switch

- To enable or disable the reversing radar system, go to infotainment touchscreen →  → **ADAS** → **Parking Assist**.
- When the ignition is switched on, the parking assist system is enabled automatically.
- When enabled, the system raises an alarm if obstacles are found around the vehicle; when disabled, it does not.

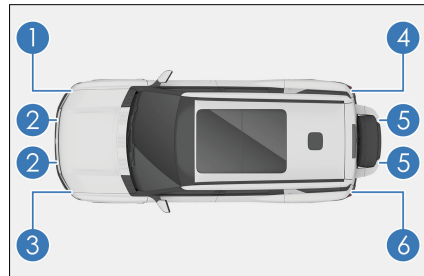
### Sensor Type

- When the sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the

infotainment touchscreen according to the location of the obstacle and its distance from the vehicle.

- When the driver conducts parallel parking or reverse parking, the sensor measures the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle and communicates this information through the infotainment touchscreen and the speaker. Be aware of the surroundings when using this system.




- ① Front right corner sensor
- ② Front center sensors
- ③ Front left corner sensor
- ④ Rear right corner sensor
- ⑤ Rear center sensor
- ⑥ Rear left corner sensor





### Distance Display and Speaker

When the sensor detects an obstacle, the location of the obstacle and its approximate distance from the vehicle are displayed on the infotainment touchscreen, and the speaker beeps.

### Working example of center sensors

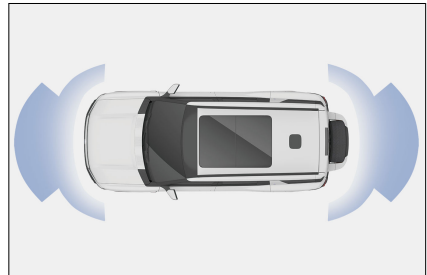
Approximate Distance (mm)	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 700 to 1,200		Slow
About 300 to 700		Fast
About 0 to 300		Continuous

#### Working example of corner sensors

Approximate Distance (mm)	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 300 to 600		Fast
About 0 to 300		Continuous

#### CAUTION

- 0~200mm is the blind spot range of the system. For the poor detection accuracy and inaccurate alarm information, the alarm prompts in 0~200mm are for reference only.



#### Working Sensors and Detection Range

All sensors are activated upon reversing.


The illustration shows the sensors' detection range. Sensors have a range limitation, so the driver must check the surroundings before slowly reversing the vehicle.

#### REMINDER

- The parking assist system is only used for assistance rather than substitution of your personal judgment. Be sure to operate the vehicle based on your observations.
- Sensors will not work properly if accessories or other objects are placed within their detection range.



## REMINDER

- In some cases, the system cannot operate properly and will fail to detect certain objects as the vehicle approaches them. Therefore, be sure to observe the vehicle's surroundings at all times. Do not rely solely upon the system.
- Failure of the parking radar system is indicated by the message "  Parking radar failed, please contact BYD service" on the instrument cluster and a beep. In that case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

### Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and surroundings may affect the sensors' ability to accurately detect obstacles. Detection accuracy may be affected if:
  - There is dirt, water or fog on the sensor.
  - There is snow or frost on the sensor.
  - The sensor is masked in any way.
  - The vehicle leans significantly to one side or is overloaded.
  - The vehicle is moving on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, macadam or grass.
  - The sensor has been repainted.
  - The vicinity is noisy due to honking of vehicles, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other noises that produce ultrasonic waves.
  - There's another vehicle with parking assist system nearby.
- The vehicle is fitted with a tow eye.
- The bumper or the sensor was hit hard.
- The vehicle is approaching a high or zigzag curb.
- The vehicle is driving in the sun or in the cold.
- The vehicle is fitted with non-original suspension that is lower than the original one.
- Except as described above, sensors may not be able to correctly determine the actual distance due to the shape of the object.
- The shape and material of obstacles may prevent sensors from detecting them, especially the following:
  - Electric wires, fences, and ropes
  - Cotton, snow, and other materials that absorb radio waves
  - Any object with sharp edges and corners
  - Low obstacles
  - High obstacles facing outwards towards the vehicle
  - Any object under the bumper
  - Any object close to the vehicle
  - Persons near the vehicle (depending on the type of clothing)
- If an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen or there is a beep, it may be that the sensor detects an obstacle or is interfered. If the issue persists, it is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for a service.



### CAUTION

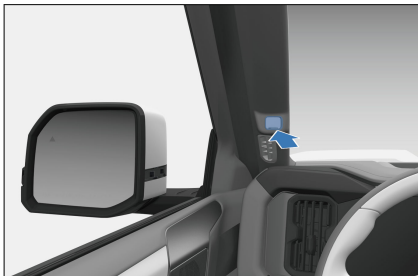
- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not rinse or apply steam to the sensor area.


## Driver Monitoring System (DMS)

- The driver monitoring system (DMS), including fatigue and distraction driving warning, is designed to monitor and assess the driving status locally by taking cabin photos with the system's camera. Based on the results, it reminds the driver of safe and careful driving.

### How to Use

- The camera for DMS is mounted on the A-pillar of the driver's side. Make sure it is unobstructed before use. If the camera is obstructed, no valid photos can be taken although the camera is still operational. Therefore, the function fails to work properly.



- When the ignition switched on, set the driver monitoring systems on the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Vehicle** → **Cabin Perception**.

### Functions

#### Fatigue driving warning

- With the vehicle speed meeting the system activation condition, fatigue driving warning enabled and the camera unobstructed, when the system detects signs of fatigue, such as closing eyes, it alerts the driver promptly through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, or through intelligent voice or an audible alarm.

#### Distraction driving warning

- With the vehicle speed meeting the system activation condition, distraction driving warning enabled and the camera unobstructed, when the system detects signs of distraction, for example, the sight deviates from the front for a long time, and there is no steering action or the turn signals are not turned on, it alerts the driver promptly through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, or through intelligent voice or an audible alarm.




### REMINDER

- Clean the DMS camera lens with a clean and soft cloth and exercise caution to prevent any damage to the surface.
- Activation conditions:
  - DMS enabled.
  - Vehicle speed  $\geq 60$  km/h.
  - Camera unobstructed and functioning normally.



### CAUTION

- The driver monitoring system is only an auxiliary system and is not capable of effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations. It cannot completely replace the driver's subjective observation and judgment. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle at

 **CAUTION**

all times, complying with all road laws and regulations, and taking full responsibility for the vehicle.

- The proper functioning and accuracy of the driver monitoring assistance can be affected by a number of situations, including but not limited to:
  - Driver monitoring system is disabled.
  - The camera is obstructed.
  - The camera is directly exposed to strong light.
  - Part of the driver's face is exposed to light or the complete facial features are hard to recognize.
  - The driver wears infrared-blocking glasses.
  - The driver wears a mask or something that covers the face.
  - The driver is not properly seated or the driver's face is in the blind spot of the camera.

 **WARNING**

- The driver should pull over the vehicle as soon as possible when feeling tired.

## Driving Safety Systems

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, these systems only provide assistance, and excessive reliance on them is not recommended.

## Intelligent Power Braking System

- The intelligent power braking system is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic brake system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, Antilock Braking System (ABS), ESC system and other features.
- The system assists vehicle braking according to the driver's demands. It offers advanced control functions such as anti-lock braking system (ABS), electronic brake force distribution (EBD), traction control system (TCS), vehicle dynamic control (VDC), adaptive cruise control (ACC), automatic emergency braking (AEB), comfort stop (CST), cooperative regenerative brake systems (CRBS) to improve vehicle stability and comfort, and the recovery efficiency of brake energy.

## Vehicle Dynamics Control(VDC)

When the vehicle turns suddenly while running, the VDC system determines the driver's intention based on such information as steering wheel's angle and vehicle speed, and continuously compares with the actual condition. If the vehicle swerves from the normal lane, the VDC corrects the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

 **WARNING**

- When the vehicle is in the sand mode or the differential lock function is turned on, the VDC will be turned off and the ESC OFF lamp will be turned on.

## Traction Control System(TCS)

TCS prevents the drive wheels from skidding during acceleration by reducing the motor power, and, when necessary,

applies braking forces to prevent drive wheels from spinning. It makes it easy for the vehicle to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

 **WARNING**

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - On slippery roads, even if TCS is working properly, it may not be able to control the direction and meet power requirements.
  - Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

### Hill Hold Control(HHC)

When starting on a hill, the braking force can be maintained for several seconds after the driver releases the brake pedal.


### Hydraulic Brake Assist(HBA)

When you press the brake pedal quickly, HBA detects that the vehicle is in emergency condition. It quickly increases the brake pressure to the maximum so that ABS can intervene more quickly and shorten the braking distance effectively.

### Controller Deceleration Parking(CDP)

When "P" button is pressed and held, CDP starts to work and the vehicle brakes at a constant deceleration until the vehicle comes to a stop. If the driver releases "P" button, CDP stops functioning.

### Hill Descent Control(HDC)


- The HDC function is suitable for urban road conditions.
- Working principle: HDC is a value-added function of the ESC system to improve vehicle comfort. Users can turn on or off the HDC function through the infotainment touchscreen  
→  → Drive → Intelligent Assist

setting interface. The main function of HDC is to assist in uphill and downhill slow driving through active braking. When HDC is working, ABS is activated when the wheel slip exceeds the ABS triggering threshold, allowing you to safely and smoothly go downhill, or even reverse.

- Activate HDC:
  - Enable HDC on the infotainment touchscreen. When the function is enabled, its status indicator on the instrument cluster is steady on.
- HDC speed control:
  - You can adjust the speed by pressing/releasing the accelerator or brake pedal. The vehicle speed is set when the accelerator or brake pedal is released. The HDC status indicator flashes to indicate that the HDC is working.
- Deactivate HDC:
  - If there is no need to use the HDC function, click the "HDC" on the central control screen again to turn off, and then the indicator light of the instrument will go out.
  - HDC also automatically stops when the speed exceeds about 65 km/h.
- HDC malfunction:
  - In some special cases such as long downhill, the HDC function may be temporarily disabled due to the high temperature of the brake.
  - A "Please check the HDC system" message is displayed for safety. To restore the function, stop the vehicle until the brake temperature cools down.

**Intelligent power braking system has the following new functions compared with the original ESC system:**

- Brake assist mode

- The brake assist mode is used to adjust the brake pedal feel. The relation curve between the brake pedal depth and the vehicle deceleration varies across different modes for the driver to choose their preferred pedal feel.
- The user can set Comfort or Sport pedal feel by the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Drive** → **Driving Control** → **Steering Assist Mode**.
- Brake disc wiping
  - Brake disc wiping function: When the wiper switch is on or the rain sensor detects rain, the integrated brake control system applies a small brake pressure to all four brakes so that pads come into contact with discs to remove the water film from the discs. This shortens brake response time and braking distance.
  - As long as the system detects rain or the wiper ON signal, the brake discs are repeatedly wiped at certain intervals to improve safety.

### ESC operation instructions

- ESC working
  - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.
- Disabling ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce power output from the motor to the wheels. In this case, you may need to turn off the system to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
  - To turn off ESC, press and release the ESC OFF button. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If

ESC OFF switch is pressed while ESC system is working, the system will complete the active intervention control rather than executes the "shutdown" command immediately. ESC is disabled only after the intervention control is complete.


- Some ESC functions may be re-enabled if you press the ESC OFF switch again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold (120 km/h). In order to prevent ESC from being turned off suddenly, ESC can be activated again only when it is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.
- ESC OFF switch mis-operation\*
  - ESC is considered to be mis-operated if the ESC OFF switch\* is pressed and held for more than 10 seconds. In that case, all internal ESC functions continue to work.
- Restarting ESC system
  - When the ESC system has been turned off, restarting the vehicle will automatically restart ESC system.
- ESC system start and speed linkage
  - If the ESC system is turned off, when the vehicle becomes extremely unstable as the speed increases and exceeds the threshold (120 km/h), the ESC system starts on its own.

### WARNING

- In snow, sand, mud, mountain, rock and wading modes, when the vehicle speed increases and exceeds the threshold (120km/h), the ESC system will not start automatically and needs to be turned on manually.
- Press ESC OFF switch to turn off ESC. At this time, please control the vehicle carefully and avoid

**! WARNING**

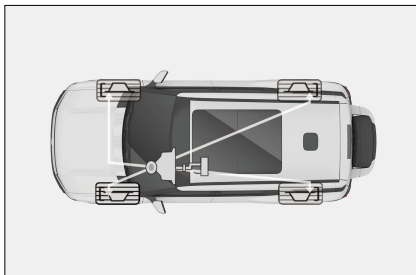
driving violently. So as not to cause hardware failure. To ensure the driving stability of the vehicle, do not turn off the ESC function unless necessary.


- When ESC system is activated
  - If the ESC fault indicator  flashes, drive with caution.
- ESC disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Replacing tires
  - Make sure all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tires to the recommended pressure.
  - Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tires.
  - For details on tire or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Tire and suspension handling
  - The use of any defective tire or modified suspension affects the driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

### Anti-lock Braking System

- The ABS hydraulic system has two separate circuits, each running diagonally through the vehicle (left front wheel brake connected to the right rear wheel brake). If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.

- ABS helps maintain the steering control by preventing the wheels from locking when brake is engaged suddenly or on slippery roads.



- When the ABS is working, the ESC indicator  will flash and the brake pedal will vibrate, which may produce noise. This is because the ABS is pulsating the brake quickly, which is normal. In this situation, press and hold the brake pedal. Never pulsate or repeatedly tapping the brake pedal; otherwise, ABS may not function properly. While steering to avoid danger, a firm and steady pressure should always be maintained on the brake pedal to ensure the ABS functions properly.

**! WARNING**

- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
  - Tires with inadequate grip are used (for example, excessively worn tires used on snow-covered roads).
  - The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.
- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle. Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead on:

### **WARNING**

- Driving on slippery, muddy, sandy or snowy roads.
- Driving on roads with multiple potholes or on uneven roads.
- Driving on bumpy roads.

### **CAUTION**

- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.
- ABS does not reduce the time and distance required to stop the vehicle. This system only helps you control steering when braking. Always keep a safe distance from other vehicles.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability either. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.
- When driving on wet, soft or uneven roads (such as waterlogged concrete roads,


### **CAUTION**

waterlogged epoxy painted roads, sandy roads, snowy roads), vehicle equipped with ABS may require longer braking distance than vehicle without ABS. In such cases, reduce the vehicle speed and keep a greater distance from other vehicles.

## Night Vision System\*

The night vision system collects the thermal radiation image reflected by the target through the far infrared camera. It can assist the driver to improve the driving visual distance in the dark environment at night, and provide forward collision warning function for pedestrians, large animals and vehicles in the driving direction, so as to improve the driving safety.

### How to Use

- Users can pull down the convenient menu through the infotainment touchscreen, press the convenient switch for a short time, and jump to the setting interface for function setting.
- Go to the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Drive** → **Intelligent Assist** → **Night Vision System** to enable or disable the corresponding functions like night vision, automatic activation and collision warning.
- Enable or disable Night vision system/ Automatic activation/Collision warning by intelligent voice.
- Night vision system mode and automatic activation function are turned off by default, and collision warning is turned on by default.

## Instructions

### Night vision system

- Far infrared night vision mode: It is recommended to be used at night in the open field, and the instrument cluster displays the far infrared picture.

### Automatic activation

- The night vision system can be turned on automatically when the following conditions are met simultaneously:
  - In the dark environment at night.
  - The vehicle speed shall be within 60km/h ~ 120km/h, and the vehicle speed shall be within 30km/h ~ 120km/h in the off-road mode.
  - Pedestrians or large animals are identified ahead.
- When the night vision screen is turned on automatically, the night vision system can be turned off automatically if one of the following conditions is met:
  - The environment is well lit.
  - The vehicle speed is below 10 km/h and lasts for 10 minutes.

### REMINDER

- If the night vision screen is turned off manually after the screen is turned on automatically, the system will not turn on the night vision screen automatically in this power-on cycle of the vehicle.




### Collision warning

- The collision warning function can identify and warn the pedestrians, vehicles or large animals with collision risk in front of the vehicle within the speed range of 30 km/h ~ 120 km/h when the night vision system screen is

turned on. At this time, the instrument will display as follows:

- The warning target is marked with a red box.
- Pop-up window "Please pay attention to the road ahead".
- The night vision indicator turns red.

## System Indicator

- Status Description:
  - Night vision system disabled: no relevant indicators are displayed on the instrument cluster.
  - The night vision system is turned on, and there is a collision warning target in front of the vehicle, a red indicator  is displayed on the instrument cluster.
  - The night vision system is turned on, and there is a collision warning target in front of the vehicle, a red indicator  is displayed on the instrument cluster.
  - When the night vision system malfunctions,  is displayed on the instrument cluster, with a prompt "night vision system failure, please contact the service station".

## System Limitations

- The night vision system only warns when the target is within the visual range of the infrared camera, which is equivalent to the picture displayed by the instrument cluster.
- Under the following circumstances, the recognition performance of the night vision system may be reduced or lost, which may cause the system to fail to recognize the warning:

- The target is partially or completely blocked by another object, such as a parked vehicle, especially if the head is covered.
- The target contour is incomplete or interrupted, such as by strong light reflection.
- Due to special clothing or other items affecting night vision infrared imaging, such as glass and ice.
- Pedestrians whose height is less than 0.8 meters, or small animals with special body shape.
- A target within 10 meters of the vehicle.
- Pedestrians are in a non-standing state, such as sitting, squatting and lying.
- The recognition accuracy of the system is limited, and the target with an overlap rate of more than 50% will be recognized as a target.
- In extreme cases of poor visibility, such as heavy snow, heavy rain, haze or strong splashing.
- The night vision camera is damaged or obscured (e.g. by rain, mud, frost, snow).
- When you are driving on steep uphill, downhill, sharp turns and winding roads.
- If the vehicle has been modified or collided, it may lead to changes in the position of the camera and affect the recognition accuracy of the camera.
- When the ambient temperature  $\geq 32\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$  or the temperature difference between the environment and the target is less than  $5\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ , the imaging quality of far-infrared night vision will be significantly reduced, and the far-infrared night vision system can not

detect objects that can not emit heat by themselves.

- Even if the night vision system will analyze the shape and thermal radiation of each recognized object, the system still has its limits, which does not exclude the possibility of issuing false warnings.
- There may be a brief pause in the picture due to technical reasons.

#### CAUTION

- The night vision system is only used as an assistant driver, and the driver should still drive cautiously and adjust the driving mode according to the current road and traffic conditions.
- It is unsafe to drive only by night vision system, because there is a certain blind area in front of the vehicle, and the driver still needs to observe the situation around the vehicle in other ways to avoid accidents.
- Assess the distance between the vehicle and an object through multiple methods, as the distance displayed on the night vision system may differ from subjective perception, especially when an object is in close proximity to the vehicle.
- The night vision collision warning function only provides a warning reminder and cannot automatically brake the vehicle. Please do not rely on the display and warning of the night vision system to drive. The driver should control the distance with the vehicle in front, control the speed and brake in time.



## CAUTION

- Night vision collision warning function can not guarantee accurate identification of warning in any case, in complex traffic conditions, the system can not guarantee the correct identification of vehicles, pedestrians and large animals at all times.
- A faulty night vision system may have an unwanted warning, for example, due to a night vision camera angle misalignment.
- Please check and clean camera regularly. In bad weather or snowy weather, please ensure that the camera is not covered by mud, ice and snow.
- It is recommended to visit a DENZA authorized service provider for professional calibration and verification of the night vision camera in any of the following situations:
  - Remove the night vision camera.
  - The vehicle experienced a collision.
  - System performance is degraded or abnormal.



# 05

## IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

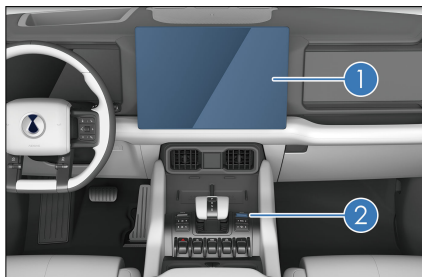
Infotainment System.....	230
A/C System.....	240
BYD App.....	245
Storage.....	246
Refrigerator.....	248
Other Devices.....	251

# Infotainment System


## Infotainment Touchscreen

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the infotainment system starts to work. To better experience infotainment touchscreen functions, such as intelligent voice control, apps and video call, the system must be used after network connection.

- ① Infotainment touchscreen
- ② Power button/Volume scroll button



### Reset to factory settings

- The infotainment system can be reset to the factory settings by tapping  → **System** → **Version** → **Factory Reset** → **Reset**.
- This function factory resets the infotainment system.
  - During the process, do not touch any infotainment button or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
  - The process takes two to five minutes, please wait patiently.

### WARNING

- Do not use a high-power inverter in the vehicle, as this may cause infotainment system malfunction.
- Do not format or root the device without authorization, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.

### CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove your finger from the screen, then touch it again.
  - Clean the screen with a soft damp cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.
- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.
- To better experience infotainment system functions, such as intelligent voice control, apps and video call, the system must be used after network connection.

## Infotainment System

A warning is displayed when the infotainment system starts for the first time. Tap Agree to enter the system.

When the infotainment system is started, the screen is automatically displayed, containing status bar, navigation bar, and desktop widgets.

### Top status bar

- The status bar displays status icons for functions such as time, network, Bluetooth, and cellular signal.
- Icons for functions such as microphone and location are displayed when the using conditions are met.
- It provides quick access to certain functions, for example, tapping the voice icon activates BYD assistant.

### Shortcut menu

Swipe down from the top of the touchscreen to open the shortcut menu. The shortcut menu is divided into two areas:

- Fixed function area: Provide functional operation modules such as volume, brightness, WLAN, bluetooth, profile, mandatory battery protection\* and desktop selection;
- Custom function: Provide more vehicle control functions, users can edit freely, move their commonly used functions to the default display of the first screen, and change the order of functions.









#### CAUTION

- The shortcut menu on your actual vehicle may differ.

### Navigation bar

The navigation bar supports customization. Long press the icon to enter edit mode, then configure the displayed buttons according to your preference.

-  : returns to the previous screen or exits the program.
-  : returns to the homepage.
-  : goes to the vehicle settings screen.
-  : splits screen if applications support.
-  : goes to the app list screen.
-  : goes to the A/C settings screen.

### Task management center

Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen opens the task management center.

### Desktop widget

The components on the desktop are customized by factory default, and users can add, delete, or change the location of widgets according to their preferences.

- Add widget: Slide the desktop component, and the right side of the widget area provides an entry for adding widgets. Users can click the entry to add widgets by themselves.
- Delete widget: Long press the icon of the widget to be deleted to display the deletion mark. Click the deletion mark to delete the widget.
- Changing widget position: Touch and hold a widget icon, drag it to the position of another widget, and then release it.

### REMINDER

- Factory-configured desktop widgets cannot be deleted.

## Application center

This interface displays a list of apps and recently used applications. Use voice command to open applications. Start an application by clicking the icon.

### REMINDER

- When the infotainment system malfunctions, upload the fault information in "Practical Tools".
- The loaded application is subject to the actual configuration of the vehicle.

## Vehicle Setting of the Infotainment System

Vehicle setting of the infotainment system mainly includes: Search, common, lighting, doors, windows and locks, sound and display, energy, driving and other functional modules.

### Commonly used

Personalize and recommend the function items frequently used by users.

### Lighting

Contains light setting options such as: Headlight height adjustment, home lighting delay, ambient light settings and other options.

### Window and lock

Contains options for door and window lock settings, such as: Lock the vehicle, automatically close the window, remote unlock settings and other options.

### Sound and display

Contains sound display setting options such as: Audio, head-up display, instrument, screen settings and other options.

### Energy

Contains energy setting options such as: Energy management mode, energy feedback intensity, charging port electric lock anti-theft and other options.

### Driving

Contains options for driving settings such as: Driving mode, steering power mode and other options.

### ADAS

Including ADAS options such as: Driving assistance, safety assistance, parking assistance and other options.

### System Setup

Contains system setup options such as: Software version check update, system language, Bluetooth settings and other options.


## Gestures and Responses

Gestures and associated system responses are:

- Tapping: opens applications, selects functions, clicks icons on the touchscreen, or types characters.
- Dragging: touching and dragging an icon, thumbnail, or preview to the target position to change its location.
- Swiping: operational on homepage and app screens.
- Double-tapping: Zooms in an image or shows full screen. Double-tap again to return.
- Spreading/Pinching: zooms in or out an image with two fingers.

- Swiping left/right with three fingers: regulates A/C fan speed.
- Swiping up/down with three fingers: regulates A/C temperature.
- Swiping down from the top of the touchscreen: opens the shortcut menu.
- Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen: opens the task management center.
- Sliding from the left/right of the touchscreen: returns to the last screen.

## OTA Update

- The vehicle supports Over-the-Air (OTA) update. You can update the infotainment system by tapping **infotainment touchscreen**  → **System** → **Version** → **Vehicle Version** → **Upgrade**.
- When a vehicle software needs to be updated, there will be a prompt message. You can upgrade it immediately, schedule an upgrade, or upgrade it by mobile phone according to your use of the vehicle.

### CAUTION



- Do not move the vehicle during the OTA upgrade.
- Before the OTA upgrade, make sure the vehicle is parked in a safe area with the gear in "P", and the mobile communication network connection is normal.
- Make sure your vehicle is fully charged before the OTA upgrade.
- Do not install any third-party devices at the vehicle's OBD port before or during the OTA upgrade.

### CAUTION

- The vehicle cannot be charged or discharged during an upgrade. Make sure your vehicle is fully charged before the upgrade.
- During the OTA upgrade, all functions are not available except the smart key/microswitch unlocking/locking, interior light switch, hazard warning light, and window switches.
- If the OTA upgrade fails, try it again. If it also fails, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for handling.

## BYD Assistant

Intelligent Voice Assistant responds to your voice commands, such as requesting navigation, playing music/radio, making a phone call, and controlling in-vehicle devices.

- Waking up intelligent voice assistant:
  - On the steering wheel, press the  button.
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap .
  - Say the wake word: Hi, BYD.
- Your voice commands can be recognized after system wake-up.
- Then, you can give the instruction.
  - This may be "Go home" (shortcut locations set), "Play music", "Make a call" (contacts data and Bluetooth connection required), "Set the temperature to 23°C", or "Turn on the seat ventilation for the driver". Intelligent voice assistant then performs the recognized instruction.

## Scenario Mode

To achieve vehicle control linkage, enable or disable scenario modes in the drop-down shortcut menu on the infotainment touchscreen or through voice commands. This allows multiple settings linkage to meet needs in various scenarios such as family travel, entertainment, and relaxation.

### Nap Mode

- **Mode activated:** When you need a short rest, enable the nap mode by accessing the scenario mode options in the drop-down shortcut menu on the infotainment touchscreen or through voice commands. To activate the mode, set the duration and then confirm. To exit the mode, tap "End Now".
- **Alarm settings:** After the nap. There will be an alarm at the end of the nap time. Tap "Cancel" to end it. If the user does not have any operation, the alarm clock will extend a period of napping time by default, and will remind again when the time is up.
- **Mode effect:** In the nap mode, the selected seat is automatically lowered to the default position, the A/C is turned on, the vehicle is locked, and systems such as the windows and the sunroof are automatically closed. The infotainment touchscreen displays the nap mode interface, with the front passenger screen and the instrument cluster screen off.

#### CAUTION

- Before activating the nap mode, make sure the OK indicator stays on and the vehicle is in Park.

#### CAUTION

- Before entering the nap mode, close all doors and the trunk to ensure safety.
- Before entering the nap mode, check the vehicle remaining driving range to avoid inconvenience.
- After safely parking the vehicle, check the area under the vehicle to avoid the exhaust pipe igniting flammable materials such as dry grass, fallen leaves, or wheat straws.
- Do not turn on nap mode in a poorly ventilated environment.
- Do not take a nap in the vehicle while it is being charged or discharged.
- In order to prevent the middle/rear passengers or items from being pinched or damaged, please ensure that the middle/rear seats are free of passengers and objects before entering the nap mode.
- The vehicle will automatically exit the nap mode in some cases, such as when the vehicle is not in Park or is powered off, which is normal.

### Camping Mode

- **Mode activated:** When you need camp outdoors, enable the camping mode by accessing the scenario mode options in the drop-down shortcut menu on the infotainment touchscreen or through voice commands.
- **Alarm settings:** Users can set the alarm clock in the camping mode. When the set time is reached, the alarm clock will remind the user. Tap "Turn Off Alarm" to end the alarm. If the user does not have any operation, the alarm

clock will extend a period of camping time by default, and will remind again when the time is up.

- **Mode effect:** After entering the camping mode, the air conditioner turns on, the windows, sunroof and sunshade turn off, the central infotainment touchscreen plays the dynamic camping effect selected by the user, and other in-vehicle screens will be turned off. At the same time, the vehicle automatically adjusts to a level posture. After the user locks the vehicle, the lights automatically turn off.



#### **CAUTION**

- Before activating the camping mode, make sure the OK indicator stays on and the vehicle is in Park.
- Before entering the camping mode, check the vehicle remaining driving range to avoid inconvenience.
- After safely parking the vehicle, check the area under the vehicle to avoid the exhaust pipe igniting flammable materials such as dry grass, fallen leaves, or wheat straws.
- Do not turn on camping mode in a poorly ventilated environment.
- Do not camp in the vehicle while it is being charged or discharged.
- The vehicle may automatically exit camping mode under certain conditions, such as air conditioning failure, low battery, or power-off. These scenarios are normal.

#### **Baby Mode**

- During vehicle use, you can enable the baby mode by accessing the

scenario mode options on the drop-down shortcut menu on the central infotainment touchscreen, or via voice commands.

- When baby mode is enabled, the infotainment system volume is reduced, four doors are locked, rear windows are closed with locks engaged, sunroof and sunshade are closed, child protection locks are enabled on the second-row control panel, and the Boss button is blocked. The infotainment touchscreen simultaneously plays child-related music at random to create a safe, comfort, and interesting space.



#### **CAUTION**

- Before entering the baby mode, close all doors and the trunk to ensure safety.
- Do not leave children alone in the vehicle when baby mode is on.
- The infotainment system will not play children's music if the vehicle has no internet connection or Kuwo music is uninstalled.

#### **Washing mode**

- Before washing the vehicle, enable the washing mode by accessing the scenario mode options on the drop-down shortcut menu or through voice commands.
- When the washing mode is activated, the vehicle windows, sunroof and other related systems automatically close, and the children locks are automatically enabled. The infotainment touchscreen will display the status of related systems, eliminating the need for manual adjustments and offering a convenient washing process.

- When the vehicle is being washed on the conveyor belt, tap the "Automatic Vehicle Wash" button and enter the automatic vehicle washing mode as per the operation prompts. After the automatic vehicle washing mode is enabled, the outside rearview mirrors fold automatically and the gear will be shifted into Neutral automatically.

#### CAUTION

- Ensure that the vehicle speed is  $\leq 15\text{km/h}$  before entering the vehicle wash mode. If the vehicle speed is  $> 15\text{km/h}$ , the vehicle wash mode will automatically exit.
- After tapping the automatic vehicle washing button, press the brake pedal and shift into Drive to enter the automatic vehicle washing mode.
- To ensure the safety, do not leave the vehicle during the automatic vehicle washing on the conveyor belt.
- After washing the vehicle, shift gears to exit the washing mode.

#### Meditation Mode

- During vehicle use, enable the meditation mode by accessing the scenario mode options on the drop-down shortcut menu on the central infotainment touchscreen, or via voice commands.
- When the meditation mode is activated, the A/C and fragrance system are turned on, the windows, sunroof, sunshade, exterior lights, and other related systems are turned off, and the four doors are locked automatically. At the same time, the infotainment touchscreen and the passenger seat screen play the

dynamic effect of meditation theme, providing an immersive experience and helping users alleviate anxiety and relax their body and mind.

#### CAUTION

- Make sure the vehicle is in Park before activating the meditation mode.
- In order to ensure the effect of meditation mode, it is recommended to close all doors and trunk before entering this mode.
- Before entering the meditation mode, check the vehicle remaining driving range to avoid inconvenience.
- Do not turn on meditation mode in a poorly ventilated environment.
- Do not meditate in the vehicle while it is being charged or discharged.
- When the vehicle is in the Bluetooth call state, do not turn on the meditation mode to avoid affecting the call effect.
- The vehicle will automatically exit the meditation mode in some cases, such as when the vehicle is not in Park, the vehicle battery SOC is low, or the vehicle is powered off, which is normal.

## Bluetooth call

### Connection

1. On Bluetooth Call screen, tap **Please connect Bluetooth** to establish connection.
2. Tap **Scan for device** to search for available devices.

3. Pair the available device, and make sure the pairing code displayed on your phone is consistent with the code on the touchscreen.
4. Set Bluetooth when connection is complete.

### Bluetooth call

Go to the dialing screen when Bluetooth is connected.

- Tap **Contacts**, **Call log**, and **Missed calls**, or use dial keypad to make a call.
- Slide the call card upwards or tap any empty space to minimize the dialing screen.
- In panoramic view screen, a small window pops up to inform driver of a call.

## External Applications

This infotainment system is an Android-based system that supports the installation of external apps.

- Installing external apps:
  1. Download the intended app.
  2. Tap the app file, select **Allow App installation** to install it.
  3. The installed app is in the app list. Tap to use it.



### CAUTION

- Applications that are not officially certified may not work properly.
- Installing a lot of unnecessary software may make the system unusable. Use it with caution.

- Uninstalling external apps:
  1. Select the app to uninstall in System → Apps → Apps.


2. Tap **Uninstall** and confirm.



### CAUTION

- The default apps included with this infotainment system cannot be uninstalled.

## Speakers

- Devialet sound effect setting items of this vehicle include the sound field focus, sound features, headrest sound effect\* and volume adjustment with speed, which can be set on the infotainment touchscreen →  → **Audio&Display** → **Audio** interface.

### Devialet sound field focus

- Devialet sound field focus is divided into the whole vehicle, the front row and the rear row, and the use of Devialet focus technology can create a balanced sound field around the front and rear passengers.
- Full vehicle mode includes Devialet space sound effect and full vehicle custom adjustment of sound field. Devialet space sound can provide a more immersive music experience. Custom adjustment allows users to control the sound field of each direction according to their needs. Click the reset button in the upper right corner to restore the default value with one key.

### Devialet sound features

- Devialet voice features are divided into six modes: classic, soft, dynamic, rock, vocal and custom.

### Devialet head support sound effect\*

- The sound effect of Devialet headrest is divided into three modes: surround mode, driving mode and exclusive

mode. Users can switch between the three modes by clicking on demand.

- Surround mode: Linkage headrests and interior speakers for sound enhancement.
- Driving mode: Stay connected while accessing your phone and navigation voice.
- Exclusive mode: Enjoy exclusive headrest music to keep navigation calls connected.

### Volume adjusted with speed

- When the function is enabled, it effectively reduces the impact of environmental noises of road, tire, wind, engine and so on. The setting range is 0 ~ 5, where 0 is off, 1 ~ 5 correspond to different setting levels, and the default setting value is 3.

## My Car

My Car consists of vehicle control, driving behavior and vehicle health.

- Vehicle control consists of shortcut control and 3D vehicle model control\*.
- Shortcut control: Operate vehicle functions via the left shortcut bar or the bottom card shortcut, enabling one-tap control.
- 3D vehicle model control: Tap hotspot areas on the vehicle model to operate vehicle functions,
- Body color change: Switch the body color by tapping the corresponding icon.
- Vehicle control customization: Press More to view all shortcut functions, and press and hold the function icon to adjust its position.

### REMINDER

- The availability of applications depends on the vehicle's actual configuration.

## Phone Projection

### Phone Projection

Phone projection allows you to connect a smartphone to the vehicle and interact with certain mobile apps on the infotainment touchscreen.

### WARNING

- Drive safely. Avoid any possible distractions, or accidents could result.






### REMINDER

- Make sure the vehicle is in Park with the infotainment system turned on, and allow time to set up the phone projection app before you start your drive.
- The initial setup process must be completed on the phone: check prompts on the phone for security information, accept privacy policies, and grant necessary permissions.
- The first time you connect wirelessly, you will need to pair your phone and the vehicle via Bluetooth. For best results, keep your phone's Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and Location Services turned on while you complete the setup.
- Ensure your phone is in range of your mobile data network and has an active data plan.

### ! REMINDER

- Availability of services whose names or logos are shown varies by country and language, and subscriptions for services may be required.






## Apple CarPlay

- Connecting with a cable
  - Plug an iPhone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable. Apple CarPlay is then connected.
- Connecting wirelessly
  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen → application screen, tap the Apple CarPlay icon , and pair your iPhone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Apple CarPlay.
- Switching between Apple CarPlay and in-vehicle infotainment system
  - To exit the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the DENZA icon  on this interface, or  or  in the shortcut bar.
  - To access the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the Apple CarPlay icon  on the infotainment system's application screen.
- For available regions of Apple CarPlay, visit <https://www.apple.com/ios/feature-availability/#apple-carplay>.

## Android Auto

- Connecting with a cable
  1. Plug a smartphone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable.

2. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up Android Auto.

- Connecting wirelessly
  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen → application screen, tap the Android Auto icon , and pair your smartphone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Android Auto.
- Switching between Android Auto and in-vehicle infotainment system
  - To exit Android Auto user interface, tap  on this interface, or  or  in the shortcut bar.
  - To go back to Android Auto, tap the Android Auto icon  on the infotainment system's application screen.
- To use Android Auto on the infotainment touchscreen, you need a compatible Android smartphone. You can check the list of compatible smartphones at [g.co/androidauto/](http://g.co/androidauto/) requirements undefined.

### ! REMINDER

- Android Auto is integrated into phones with Android 10 and above. You do not need to download it.
- For wired or wireless connection, your phone might ask you to update Android Auto before you continue.

## Trademark statement

- Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

# A/C System



## Illustration of A/C Panel

### Front A/C Panel

- ① A/C ON/OFF
- ② Front windshield defroster



## A/C Operation Interface

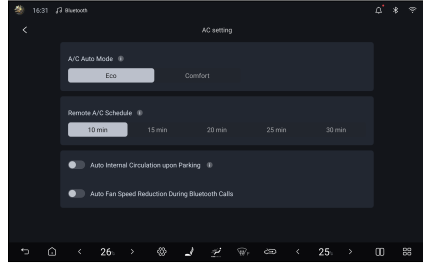
- To access the A/C setting interface, go to the infotainment touchscreen →  → .

### A/C auto mode

- Provides two options: **Eco** and **Comfort**.

### Remotely controlled air conditioner running time

- Sets the time for remote A/C running.



### Auto air recirculation

- Tap this button to enable this setting.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

### Auto fan speed reduction during Bluetooth calls

- Tap this button to enable this setting.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

## Front A/C Operation Interface



- |   |                               |    |                                       |
|---|-------------------------------|----|---------------------------------------|
| 1 | Front A/C operation interface | 9  | Rear defroster                        |
| 2 | Rear A/C operation interface  | 10 | Max cooling                           |
| 3 | A/C ON/OFF                    | 11 | ION                                   |
| 4 | Auto mode                     | 12 | Driver's temperature control          |
| 5 | Cooling                       | 13 | Front passenger's temperature control |
| 6 | Ventilation                   | 14 | Synchronization button                |
| 7 | Circulation mode              | 15 | Fan speed control                     |
| 8 | Front defroster               | 16 | Air distribution                      |

## Function Definition

### • A/C ON/OFF

- Tap this button to disable the A/C if it is ON.
- Tap this button to enable the A/C if it is OFF.

### • Auto mode

- After tapping this button, its indicator lights up on the front A/C panel, and cooling status, fan speed and air distribution can be adjusted automatically.
- The vehicle exits auto control if fan speed or air distribution is set, and other functions remain in auto mode except for those that have been operated.

### • **Cooling**

- Tap this button for cooling.
- Tap this button a second time to disable it.

### • **Circulation mode**

- Tap this button to switch to recirculation mode.
- Tap it again to switch to fresh air mode.

### **CAUTION**

- When the "automatic recirculation when parking" function is enabled, to ensure air quality in the vehicle and prevent the vehicle exhaust from entering the vehicle, the recirculation mode is switched on automatically after you shift into "P".

### • **Front defroster**

- Tap this button to enter the front windshield defrost mode, distributing air to the front windshield. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel lights up.
- Tap this button again to deactivate and exit the front windshield defroster control mode. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel turns off.

### • **Rear defroster**

- Tap this button to heat up and defrost the rear windshield and side mirrors. The function is automatically deactivated after 15-minute inactivity of the associated button.
- Tap this button again to disable the function.

- This function is not for drying raindrops or melting snow.

### **WARNING**

- Do not touch the side mirrors when the rear defroster is activated, because their surfaces will be hot.

### **REMINDER**

- Using the side mirror heating defrosting function for a long time may cause the mirror to wear out faster. Turn off the defrosting button when it is not needed.

### • **Max cooling**

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling mode. The temperature is set to "Lo", the fan speed is set to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air is directed to face level.
- Tap this button again to exit max cooling.

### • **Temperature control**

- Slide downward to increase the temperature. Slide upward to decrease the temperature.
- When the temperature is set to the lowest, "Lo" is displayed. When it is set to the highest, "Hi" is displayed.

### • **Air distribution**

- You can turn on multiple air distribution modes at a time (up to three: defrosting, blowing face, and blowing legs).
- Adjustments can be made according to the air supply illustration.
- Face-level vent Air flows to the face level.

- Foot-level vent Air flows to the foot level.
- Defrost mode: Air flows to the front windshield and side windows.
- **Fan speed control**
  - Tap this button to adjust the blower speed to an appropriate level. The higher the level is, the greater the blower speed is.
- **Synchronization button**
  - The temperature setting, windshield setting and air outlet mode state of all temperature zones of the vehicle are controlled synchronously with the temperature zone of the driver.
- **ION**
  - Turn on the negative ion generator to generate negative ions to achieve the effect of dust removal and purification, and provide fresh air for the vehicle.
- In cold weather, run the fan at high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake passage and reduce fogging.
- Use recirculation mode for a few minutes for quick heating in cold weather, and switch to fresh air mode to prevent windows from fogging after the cabin is heated up.
- In dusty or windy conditions, close all windows, switch on the recirculation mode, and turn on the A/C.
- In heating mode, press the compressor control button to light up the button (turning on the compressor), which can reduce airflow moisture.
- In the ventilation mode, the system introduces the natural wind from outside, which is suitable for spring and autumn.
- The vehicle is equipped with the convenient function that the middle row air conditioner operation panel is linked with the front passenger. When the vehicle is in the heating mode, the front passenger air conditioner setting will be synchronized with some settings of the middle row air conditioner, providing a more uniform and comfortable ambient temperature for the vehicle.

### Usage Precautions

- To quickly cool down the interior after long exposure to sunlight, drive for a few minutes with the windows open to exhaust hot air and speed up A/C cooling.
- To speed up cooling, adjust the temperature to "Lo" and use the recirculation mode for a few minutes.
- Make sure that the air intake grille in front of the windshield is not blocked (for example, leaves or snow).
- Avoid blowing cool air onto the windshield in humid weather. The inner and outer temperature difference can cause glass fogging.
- Keep the space under the front seats clear to improve air circulation.



#### REMINDER

- A/C odor:
  - It is normal that there may be a damp and moldy smell just after the A/C is turned on. During the operation of the automobile A/C, A/C condensation often remains in the evaporator, and the wet evaporator can easily absorb unfiltered body sweat, smokes, etc., inside the vehicle. Condensation not blown dry

## REMINDER

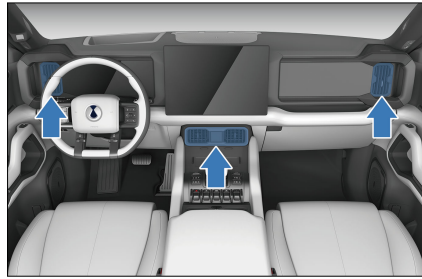
makes the dark and damp evaporator surface prone to mold, which is very likely to produce odors by long-term fermentation.

- How to prevent A/C odors:
  - Turn off the A/C and ventilate with natural air before parking to keep the air inside the vehicle relatively dry.
  - Inspect, clean, or replace the filter regularly.
  - Keep the cabin clean.
- If the odor prevention methods are useless, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- In order to reduce odors from the A/C, if the A/C is already turned on, the A/C blower may keep running for a while after the vehicle is powered off and locked. That is because the condensed water on the surface of the evaporator needs to be dried to prevent mold fermentation. It is normal for the A/C blower to start running automatically when you lock the vehicle. No need to worry about it.

## Vents

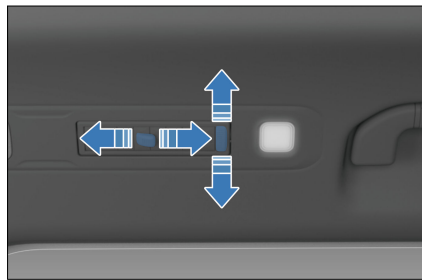
### Front Center Vent

- Turn the vent stick to adjust airflow or to open/close the vent.
- Slide the vent stick to adjust the outlet angle.



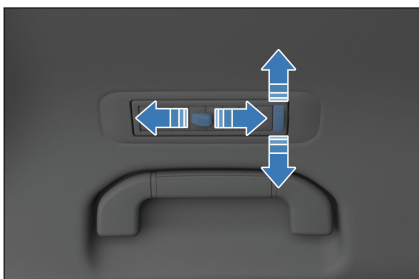
### Second row roof vents

- Use the vent stick to adjust the outlet angle (left or right) or open and close the vent.
- Press the raised gear on the side of the air outlet to adjust the angle of the air outlet up and down.



### Third row roof vents

- Use the vent stick to adjust the outlet angle (left or right) or open and close the vent.
- Press the raised gear on the side of the air outlet to adjust the angle of the air outlet up and down.



## BYD App

### BYD App\*

- BYD app is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) independently developed by BYD. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.
- You can search for "BYD" in application markets such as Google Play and App Store to download and install BYD app.

### Account Registration\*

Once the app is installed, follow the on-screen instructions or the steps below to sign up and log in.

1. Open the app, and then tap **Sign up** to go to the registration screen.
2. Enter email address registered in BYD authorized dealer, tap **Send email** to receive verification code, and then enter the code in the app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.

### CAUTION

- Provide the email address registered at the BYD authorized dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

## Vehicle Condition and Control\*

The BYD App homepage provides information and control items of the vehicle.

1. The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, seat heater, seat ventilator, and tire pressure.
2. Tap the lock, unlock, light flashing and honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding function.
3. Turn on or off A/C on the app homepage, or tap the A/C card to access other settings, such as temperature regulation.
4. At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows, or tires to go to the associated screen and check their status.
5. If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name in the upper left corner of the screen to switch between vehicles.

**CAUTION**

- The control function of the app is mainly for remote use. To use this function, ensure your phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.

## Individual Center and Vehicle Management\*

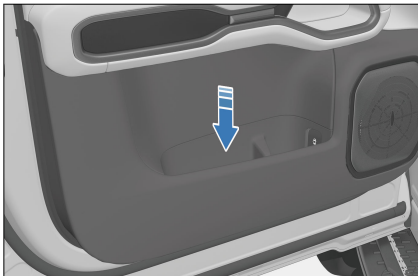
In BYD App screen, tap My Account to go to the individual center.

- Tap the icon on the top right corner of the vehicle card to edit the vehicle name and license plate number.
- Account and Security: recovers or changes your password.
- Settings: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.
- About Us: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.

## Storage

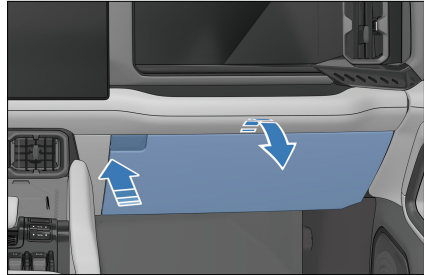
### Door Bins

There is a door bin on each door for storage of beverage bottles or small items.



### Glove Box

- Press the switch in the upper left corner to open the glove box.
- A fire extinguisher is provided in the glove box for emergency use.
- Push the lid up to close it.



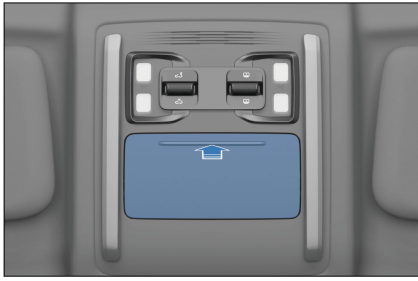
### Seatback Pockets

There are seatback pockets at the back of the front seats for magazines and newspapers. (The seatback pockets on your actual vehicle may differ.)



### Glasses Case

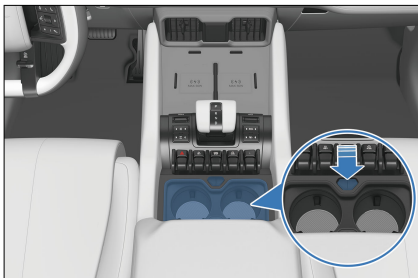
Press the lid of the case to open it.



## Cup Holders

### Front Seat Cup Holder

- The front seat cup holders are lift-type cup holders located in front of the refrigerator.
- When the cup is put into the cup bucket and pressed down, the bottom plate of the cup holder will fall down, and a larger size cup can be placed.
- Press the cupholder unlock button and the cupholder floor will rise to accommodate smaller cups.



#### CAUTION

- Please keep the inside of the cup holder clean and free of debris, such as sand, leaves, etc.

### Second-Row Seat Cup Holder

#### Seven seaters

1. Turn over the armrest of the seven-seat in the middle row.
2. Tap the cup holder button to open it automatically.



#### Six seaters

1. Flatten the armrest of the six-seat middle row seat.
2. Press the cup holder button lightly, and it will pop up automatically.



#### CAUTION

- Do not press the button with force or press the button and the cup holder panel at the same time to prevent the cup holder from popping out.

#### CAUTION

- Do not start or brake the vehicle suddenly when the cup holders are being used to prevent spillage or scalding.


## CAUTION

- Do not place an open cup or loose beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage while you are driving, opening or closing a door.
- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.

# Refrigerator

## Refrigerator

### Refrigerator Overview

- The refrigerator is located inside the central armrest compartment. Lift the armrest lid on the driver or passenger side to access it. It can also be opened by tapping the refrigerator door open button either on the second-row control panel, or on the infotainment touchscreen → **App Center**  → **Refrigerator**, to unlock the drawer, which will automatically slide out.

### Refrigerator Operation

- You can control the refrigerator through the refrigerator knob screen, second-row control panel, central infotainment touchscreen, BYD App, and voice commands.


### Refrigerator knob screen

- ① Refrigerator status display and control buttons
- ② Refrigerator temperature controls




- Switching modes: Press the knob to switch between Off, Cooling, and Heating. Short press switches between Cooling and Heating and long press turns the refrigerator off.
- Adjusting temperature: Rotate the knob clockwise to increase temperature or counterclockwise to decrease it. Temperature units follow vehicle settings (°C/°F).
- Delayed power-off display: When delayed power-off is active, the knob screen shows remaining time. The display turns off after 5 minutes.

### Refrigerator operation interface

- To access the refrigerator operation interface, go to the infotainment touchscreen → **App Center**  → **Refrigerator** to set the working mode and temperature.

### Refrigerator settings interface

- Tap the settings button  on the operation interface to enter the settings interface where you can to adjust the operating mode, enable or disable power-off memory, and configure delayed power-off.

### Refrigerator Functions

#### Working mode

- The refrigerator has three working modes: Off, Cooling, and Heating.

- When the refrigerator is turned off, the temperature cannot be adjusted.
- In Cooling mode, the temperature can be adjusted between -6°C and 6°C.
- In Heating mode, the temperature can be adjusted between 35°C and 50°C, and the refrigerator will maintain the temperature once the set temperature is reached.



#### REMINDER

- Cooling may not operate when ambient temperature is below 5°C.

#### Operating mode

- The refrigerator has two operating modes: Intelligent and Economy.
- In Intelligent Mode, the refrigerator operation links with air conditioning, windows, and other vehicle systems.
- In Economy Mode, the refrigerator prioritizes energy saving during operation.

#### Power-off memory

- The refrigerator's power-off memory function can be enabled or disabled through the refrigerator's settings interface or voice commands.
- Press the button to enable power-off memory (button highlighted). The refrigerator retains its previous operating state after vehicle power-off and restart.
- Press the button again to disable the function (button grayed out). After power-off, the refrigerator will remain off upon vehicle restart.

#### Delayed power-off

- You can set the delayed power-off duration via the refrigerator's settings interface or voice commands, with

12 options ranging from 1 hour to 12 hours. The refrigerator continues running after vehicle shutdown until the set duration expires.

- The refrigerator Stops automatically if battery drops below 30%.
- If the delayed power-off function is disabled, the refrigerator does not continue after shutdown.

#### Refrigerator light

- The light illuminates when the door is open.
- The light turns off when the door is closed.

#### Door not closed alert

- If the door remains open for over 1 minute while the refrigerator is active, the refrigerator interface will display that "Refrigerator door is open, please close it promptly."

#### Heating safety reminder

- When switching from Off or Cooling to Heating, the refrigerator interface will display: "Heating enabled. Do not place items like cola that may explode."

#### Dehumidification and window closure reminder

- During cooling in humid weather, the system may prompt: "High cabin humidity detected. Activate air conditioning and close windows for dehumidification."

#### Remote control

- You can remotely control the refrigerator's working mode and temperature settings via the BYD App.

 **WARNING**

- Before heating, make sure that there are no flammable and explosive items, and no items that expand, deteriorate or volatilize easily when heated (like lighter, carbonated drinks, alcohol or wet wipes).
- Before starting the refrigeration below 0 °C, it is necessary to confirm that there are no items in the refrigerator that are easy to expand due to cold, such as carbonated drinks.
- Wipe off water or stains promptly to prevent bacteria and odors.
- Do not place unsealed containers of beverages in the refrigerator to avoid spillage when the vehicle is running.
- Do not place fragile, perishable or odorous items in the refrigerator. If placed, remove them promptly.
- Do not place overheated, corrosive and sharp objects in the refrigerator to avoid damage to the refrigerator; do not use sharp objects to scrape the inner wall.
- With the vehicle running, make sure the refrigerator door is closed to prevent articles from flying out of the refrigerator.
- Avoid leaving the refrigerator door open for extended periods, especially during emergency braking or sharp turns, to prevent items from flying out and causing injury.
- Do not rinse or immerse the refrigerator in water for cleaning.
- Do not pour water directly into the refrigerator or place unsealed

 **WARNING**

- containers to avoid leakage that could cause electrical faults or corrosion. Use sealed containers for liquids.
- Turn off all power before cleaning the refrigerator. Clean the refrigerator with a slightly damp cloth and avoid using harsh detergents such as bleach or acidic cleaners, as they may cause corrosion to the refrigerator. Do not use steel wool or metal brushes, as they may scratch the surface.

 **REMINDER**

- The refrigerator can be opened electronically; manual force may prevent proper operation. If this occurs, press and hold the rear-row door open button for 5 seconds to reset.
- To prevent foreign objects from jamming the slide rail, do not open the drawer and the flip-up lid at the same time. When the flip-up lid is open, the drawer will remain locked.
- When the refrigerator door pops out by pressing the control panel or the touchscreen button, mid-row passengers should exercise caution to avoid being pinched.
- The refrigerator's cooling performance is influenced by the environment. Extended door or window opening may reduce cooling efficiency. Close windows and turn on the air conditioning for optimal cooling.
- In humid weather, moisture may condense near the refrigerator

## ! REMINDER

after cooling is activated. Wipe it off promptly, close the windows, and turn on the air conditioning to prevent bacteria growth and unpleasant odors.

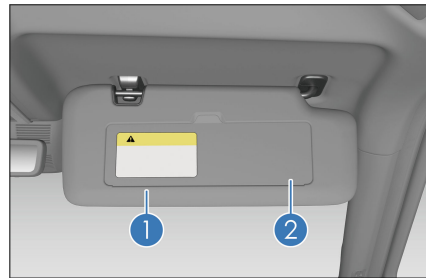
- When the refrigerator door remains open for an extended period during cooling, condensation may form inside. After placing or removing items, close the door promptly and wipe off any condensation.
- When turning the refrigerator on or off, there may be a slight noise.
- The refrigerator consumes battery power while running. It is recommended to turn off the refrigerator when it is not needed.
- When the refrigerator is in cooling mode and the delayed power-off function is enabled, the compressor and fan will continue running until the set time.
- When the refrigerator is in cooling mode with delayed power-off enabled, the air conditioning may automatically turn on after vehicle shutdown to prevent condensation near the refrigerator in high humidity.
- The optimal storage temperature for frozen foods such as ice cream is below  $-18^{\circ}\text{C}$ . At a setting of  $-6^{\circ}\text{C}$ , the refrigerator is suitable for short-term storage but cannot refreeze softened ice cream. Remove such items before leaving the vehicle.
- The refrigerator's control panel contains electronic components, and slight heating during operation is normal.

# Other Devices

## Sun Visor

### ① Sun visor

- To block sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block sunlight from a side, remove the swivel sleeve from the fixed support and turn the visor towards the side window.



### ② Vanity mirror

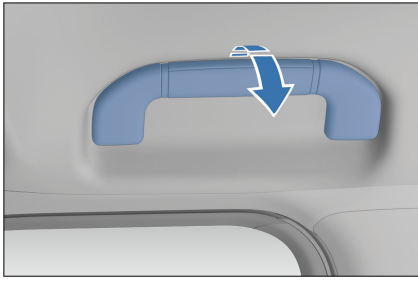
- Flip down the sun visor and slide the mirror cover for use.

## ! REMINDER

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

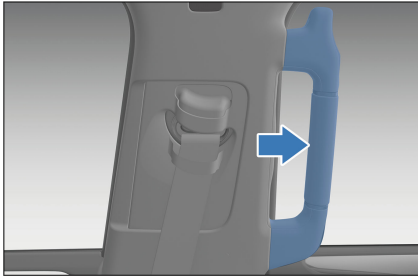
## Grab Handles

- Pull the grab handle down for use. Simply let go and allow it to return to its default position.



## Auxiliary Handles

- Auxiliary handles on the pillars can help passengers get on or off the vehicle, or hang light items temporarily.



## USB Ports

### Front-Row USB Ports

- The lower layer of the auxiliary instrument panel is provided with 2 Universal Serial Bus (USB) interfaces.
  - ① Type-C charge port (charging only)
  - ② Type-A data connector
- It be used only when the vehicle is in "ON"/"OK" gear.



### Second-Row USB Ports

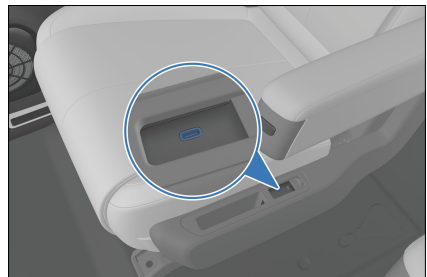
Seven seaters

- The second-row USB port is located on the periphery of the left side wing of the front passenger seat.
- It be used only when the vehicle is in "ON"/"OK" gear.



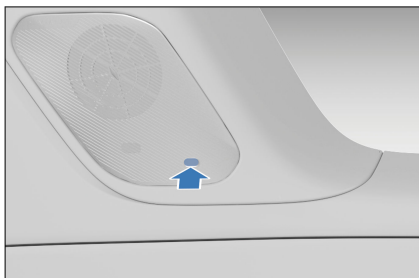
Six seaters

- The second row USB port is located on the guard beside the inner seat cushion of the second row seat.
- It be used only when the vehicle is in "ON"/"OK" gear.



## Rear-Row USB Ports

- The rear USB ports are located on the upper left and right C-pillars.
- It be used only when the vehicle is in "ON"/"OK" gear.



- The infotainment system is compatible with USB storage devices up to 128GB. It is not compatible with some USB devices on the market.
- It is recommended to use USB storage devices up to 128GB with FAT32 format.

### CAUTION

- It is recommended to use a USB storage device with partition format of FAT32, ExFAT, NTFS and memory of 8 ~ 128G.
- Do not use substandard or special USB storage devices to avoid damaging the infotainment system or data in the USB device.
- For this infotainment system, TF cards (also called Micro-SD cards), can be used with a capacity of up to 128GB.
- Basic requirements for TF card: class10 and above, FAT32 partition format.

### CAUTION

- Incompatible TF cards may result in recorder failure to write and save video files.

## On-board Power Supply

- The standby power can be used for accessories with a working current of less than 15 A and electrical power of less than 180 W.
- The 12 V auxiliary power supplies power to vehicle accessories.
- The 12V auxiliary power is available only when the ignition is on. Lift the cover to use it.

### Front 12 V Power Outlet

The front 12 V power supply is located under the auxiliary instrument panel.



### Rear row 12V Power Outlet


It is located in the trunk.



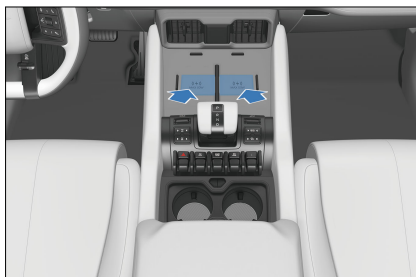
**⚠ CAUTION**

- In order to prevent the fuse from blowing, the power consumption must not exceed the total load of the vehicle 12V/180 W.
- To prevent draining the low-voltage battery, do not use the 12V auxiliary power supply for a long time when the drive motor is not running.
- When the 12V auxiliary power is not in use, close its cover. Do not insert any object other than a suitable plug into the 12V auxiliary power socket or let any liquid ingress the socket, as electrical failure may result.

## Wireless Phone Charger

- The mobile phone wireless charging area is located on the front center console. To activate/deactivate wireless charging, tap the wireless charging icon  on the shortcut page after sliding down the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen.
- After starting the vehicle, put the phone on the leather surface in the wireless charger area with the phone screen facing up. The phone automatically begins wireless charging, and a charging icon is

displayed on the central infotainment screen.



- The charger uses a coil to transmit electrical energy to the phone battery through electromagnetic wave induction so that the phone can be charged without a cable connection.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- Ensure your smart key is more than 25 cm away from the wireless charging area when the wireless charger system is working.
- To avoid wireless charger dysfunction or even accidents, do not place coins, metal keys, metal rings, or other articles containing metal in the wireless charger area together with the phone.
- To avoid damage to the charger area, do not place heavy objects on it.
- If the wireless charging system of the mobile phone is faulty and cannot be used normally, it is recommended that you contact the DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- BYD will not assume any responsibility for any problems caused by improper use. If the product is disassembled or



## CAUTION

- modified, the free warranty will be terminated.
- For safety reasons, do not leave an unattended phone being charged in the vehicle.
  - For safety reasons, refrain from checking phone charging status for a long time while driving.
  - If a metal item is found between the phone and the leather during wireless charging, do not remove with bare hands to prevent burning.
  - For better charging, the center of the phone coil must be aligned with the center of wireless charger (indicated with text in the charger area), or charging may fail.
  - Prevent any fluid from coming into contact with the charger area. The wireless charger will malfunction if water enters the wireless charger via the gap around the leather surface.
  - Charging may stop at high temperatures, and will resume once the temperature drops.
  - BYD makes no commitments for problems caused by external wireless charging coils. Please use with caution.
  - The wireless phone charger system can charge Qi-certified phones, and non-Qi-certified phones are not guaranteed for normal charging.
  - To avoid burning bank cards or others with chips, do not place them between the phone and its case during charging.



## REMINDER

- Only one phone can be charged at a time.
- A phone case that is too thick may prevent charging.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless phone charger may intermittently stop and then resume.
- Try to ensure that the surface on which a mobile phone is placed is parallel to the charging module. If the phone moves from the wireless charger area and stops charging, move it back.
- If the phone cannot be charged properly, ensure that there are no foreign objects in the wireless charger area, or wait for the wireless charger area to cool down before trying again. If the wireless charging still fails, please contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- If the charging dock remains occupied after the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened, a tone sounds from the instrument cluster and a warning text is displayed for five seconds.
- The setting icon for wireless phone charging can be added or removed on the shortcut page of the infotainment touchscreen.
- The wireless charger only works with Qi-certified phones.
- For the purpose of compatibility, the in-vehicle wireless fast charging\* module may be slower than the original charger provided by your phone's manufacturer.



#### REMINDER

- The wireless fast charging\* power of your phone depends on that supported by the phone, while the in-vehicle fast charging\* only supports up to 50 W.
- Certain phones may carry outdated charging programs that are not capable of fast charging\*.

# 06

## MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Precautions.....	258
Regular Maintenance.....	269
Self-Maintenance.....	274

# Maintenance Precautions

## Maintenance Cycle and Items

### Maintenance Plan

- The maintenance plan is designed to reduce failures, ensuring stable driving and safe, economical driving.
- The maintenance schedule lists maintenance items that are necessary to keep the vehicle in optimum condition at all times and are to be performed according to the specified time interval.

- In particular, any degraded or damaged hoses are to be replaced immediately. Rubber hoses (for systems such as cooling, heating, and braking systems) must be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.

### Maintenance Schedule

#### Vehicle Maintenance

Vehicle maintenance includes routine maintenance and other maintenance. Vehicle maintenance mileage refers to the total mileage. Maintenance should be based on the vehicle maintenance mileage and the interval months, whichever comes first.

- **Routine maintenance**

Maintenance Item	Time/Mileage Interval
HEPA filter	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 7,500 km afterwards. Replace it if necessary.
PM2.5 quick tester filter*	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 7,500 km afterwards. Replace it if necessary.
Fasteners such as high-voltage distribution box and DC charging distribution box	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 10,000 km afterwards.
Loose high-voltage wiring harnesses or connectors and connector pin ablation	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 10,000 km afterwards.
Deformation of or oil stains on the high-voltage module	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 10,000 km afterwards.
Foreign materials on or ablation of charging connector interface	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 10,000 km afterwards.
Wading marks on high-voltage parts (including high-voltage junction box)	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 10,000 km afterwards.

Maintenance Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Check the holding state of the heavy duty side-opening back door system	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 10,000 km afterwards.
Cooling pipe damage and connecting part tightness	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Electric fan*	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Loose cooling fan grounding and connectors	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Chassis screws	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Brake pedal and EPB switch	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Brake friction block and brake discs	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Brake piping and hoses	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Drive shaft boot	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Ball pin and dust boot	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Front and rear suspensions	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Check the active suspension system*	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.

Maintenance Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Front and rear wheel alignment	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Wheel bearing clearance	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Hood lock and fasteners	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Damage of connectors inside and outside the hood	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Coolant level in expansion tank	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Brake fluid	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Vehicle module DTCs (to be cleared after recording)	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
High-voltage battery tray, impact bar, shield, and mounting torque	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Powertrain leaks or bumps	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Fuse box and domain controller power terminal connection looseness	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Vehicle module software update (update if any)	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Check the door brakes. Remove the dust from the lever with a damp soft cloth, and apply 0.3–0.8 g of grease to the lever, riveting joint, and rotating shaft.	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.

<b>Maintenance Item</b>	<b>Time/Mileage Interval</b>
Check whether the guide block and screws of the back door are loose, and replace them if necessary	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Check whether the ball head of the non-limit stopper of the back door is loose, and replace it if necessary	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Check whether the dust cover of the back door lock is deformed or damaged, and replace it if necessary	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Check whether the buffer block of the back door falls off	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Check the lock dust cover and bolt	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Lock nut torque of wiper arm	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Vehicle glass glue attachment	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Air leakage of exhaust pipe joint	Check for it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 40,000 km afterwards.
Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, and connections	Check for it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 40,000 km afterwards.
Charcoal canister	Check for it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 40,000 km afterwards.
Steering wheel and tie rod	Check for it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 40,000 km afterwards.
Electric horn	Check for it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 40,000 km afterwards.

<b>Maintenance Item</b>	<b>Time/Mileage Interval</b>
Lamp and LED lighting	Check for it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 40,000 km afterwards.
Headlight dimming	Check for it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 40,000 km afterwards.
Foreign materials on or ablation of the EPS GND point	Check for it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 40,000 km afterwards.
EPS connector looseness and connector pin ablation	Check for it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 40,000 km afterwards.
EPS ECU corrosion	Check for it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 40,000 km afterwards.

• **Maintenance of other items**

<b>Maintenance Item</b>	<b>Time/Mileage Interval</b>
Engine coolant and drive motor coolant	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every four years or 100,000 km, whichever comes first.
Brake fluid	Replace it every two years or 40,000 km, and check it during routine maintenance
Front and rear drive gear oil	Check and replace the oil every four years or 60,000 km, whichever comes first.
Check and replace front drive differential gear oil	Replace at 18 months or 23,500 km for the first time; check and replace with the maintenance time of front and rear drive gear oil afterwards
Replace active suspension hydraulic oil*	Replace it every 100,000 km.
Check active suspension hydraulic oil fluid level*	Check it at 48 months or 80,000 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.
Tire rotation	Rotate the tires every 10,000 km
Sealing of high-voltage battery pack	Check it every 2 years or 40,000 km, whichever comes first. If the breather valve itself is damaged or cannot be tightened

Maintenance Item	Time/Mileage Interval
	and torqued during maintenance, please replace it.
Car fragrance bottle assembly*	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards, whichever comes first, and replace it if necessary. In severe driving conditions, check it every 6 months and replace it if necessary.
Initial down tilt of low beam	Calibrate it every 10,000 km.
Front drive assembly transmission filter element	Check and replace the filter (press filter) element every four years or 60,000 km, whichever comes first.
Checks 后驱总成 Transmission filter element	Check and replace the (press filter and suction filter) every four years or 60,000 km, whichever comes first.
Battery pack capacity	Test and calibrate it every six months or 72,000 km.
Check the active suspension energy accumulator*	Check it at 48 months or 80,000 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 20,000 km afterwards.

### Engine maintenance

The engine maintenance is based on the mileage or number of months, whichever

comes first. The mileage refers to the HEV mileage.

Maintenance Item	Time and mileage interval for maintenance
Engine oil and oil filter	Check and replace it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 7,500 km afterwards.
Gasoline detergent	Check and add it at 18 months or 11,000 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 7,500 km afterwards.
Spark plug	Replace it at 42 months or 18,500 km for the first time, and every 48 months or 22,500 km afterwards.
Air filter element	In normal service conditions, check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 15,000 km afterwards; Replace it at 18 months or 11,000 km

Maintenance Item	Time and mileage interval for maintenance
	for the first time, and every 24 months or 15,000 km afterwards. In severe service conditions, check and replace it in advance as appropriate.
Crankcase ventilation system (PCV valve and ventilation hose)	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 7,500 km afterwards.
Engine idle speed	Check it at 6 months or 3,500 km for the first time, and every 12 months or 7,500 km afterwards.
Charcoal canister dust filter	Replace every two years or 26,000 km, or upon frequent fuel gun auto shut-off during refueling

#### REMINDER

- Gasoline detergent must be added except for the first maintenance, and the amount added each time is one bottle (180 ml/bottle).
- If a vehicle has a mileage of more than 20,000 km and has never been added with gasoline detergent, it is recommended to add 3 bottles (180 ml/bottle) at a time, and then add 2 bottles at a time every 7,500 km.
- For areas using ethanol gasoline, it is recommended to add 1 bottle (180 ml/bottle) of gasoline detergent to every other tank of fuel.
- Add gasoline detergent first and then fill up the fuel tank. Do not refuel or add gasoline detergent before the refueling prompt is displayed or the fuel indicator turns yellow on the instrument cluster.
- To keep the high-voltage battery in optimal condition, please

#### REMINDER

- fully charge and discharge the vehicle regularly (at least every six months or 72,000 km) for battery self-calibration. You can also contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for capacity testing and calibration.
- In following severe working conditions, it is recommended to shorten the routine mileage interval based on the actual situations to protect the vehicle. The vehicle travels at low temperatures (ambient temperature <math><5^{\circ}\text{C}</math>) with short continuous driving time (<math><15\text{ min}</math>) in HEV mode or often creeps (vehicle speed <math><10\text{ km/h}</math>) for a long time.

#### Note:

- The maintenance intervals in the table are calculated starting from the purchase date.
- To keep the vehicle in the optimum state, follow the instructions below to operate the vehicle correctly.

- Before the first maintenance, break in the vehicle in ECO mode with the use ratio of HEV mode not less than 50%.
- After the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 10%.
- The replacement time interval of the oil filter can be shortened according to the degree of fouling of the gasoline engine.

### Maintenance Instructions for Special Working Conditions

- Special working conditions include general severe working conditions and off-road working conditions. After driving under special working conditions, you can check the following items by yourself. If there is any abnormality, please contact the authorized service center of DENZA Automobile in time.

Checks Item	Inspection method
Wheel assembly	Rim: After each cross-country drive on muddy terrain, thoroughly clean the bottom of the wheel rims, groove structures, or other hard-to-reach areas where mud tends to accumulate.  Wheels: Clean mud or pebbles accumulated on the tire surfaces, and check for tire wear.
Exhaust line connection	Check for leaks, loose fastenings, and damage.
Side door handles	Clean the vehicle handles using a vacuum cleaner and rinse them with clean water, paying special attention to areas where mud and dirt residues tend to accumulate.
Side door lock bodies & trunk lock body	Clean lock body with a vacuum cleaner, paying particular attention to the areas where mud and dirt residues tend to accumulate.
Electric pedal*	Check whether there is sand, dust, mud and other debris accumulated at the pedal hinges. If so, unfold the pedal, flush the front and rear pedal hinges, and apply grease at the hinges.
Back door movable guide block and bolt, back door fixed guide block and bolt	Check whether there are white marks or dirt on the surface of the guide block, and wipe it clean if necessary. Whether there is abnormal wear or damage, whether the fixation is firm, and if necessary, replace the guide block. Ensure that the surface difference of the back door is more than 2mm lower than side wall.

Checks Item	Inspection method
Check the back door lock, lock ring and bolt	Check whether the back door lock and lock ring are bumped or worn abnormally, and whether they are fixed firmly. If there is any collision, please adjust the lock ring in time and replace the components if necessary. Ensure that the surface difference of the back door is more than 2mm lower than side wall.
Check that the back door has no limit stop and ball stud	Check whether the ball stud is abnormally loosened.
Woofer	In the Devialet Sound Field Focus → Custom mode, listen to each speaker to see if it sounds normally.
Engine sound simulator	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check for water ingress.</li> <li>2. Drive slowly and listen to verify whether the sound of the engine sound simulator is normal.</li> </ol>
Panoramic camera Other cameras	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the camera body for bumps and deformations; Check the lens for scratches, cracks, dirt blockings, etc.</li> <li>2. Check whether the panoramic picture is displayed normally, whether there is a black screen, whether the image is deformed, etc.</li> </ol>
Front mmWave radars Corner mmWave radars	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the mmWave radar surfaces and bumper areas for dents, scratches, or deformation.</li> <li>2. Check the radar surfaces for dust and mud.</li> <li>3. Check whether the instrument alarms.</li> <li>4. Check whether the radars function normally.</li> </ol>
Automatic parking probe	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check whether the automatic parking probe, rubber ring and other mating parts are filled with sand and dust, if so, they need to be cleaned;</li> <li>2. Check the probe surface for damages such as abrasion, collision mark and deformation;</li> </ol>

Checks Item	Inspection method
Front laser radar assembly	3. Check whether the instrument alarms. 1. Check the laser radar for dents, scratches, or deformation. 2. Record a video with a smartphone to observe whether the laser radar is flashing normally. 3. Check whether the instrument alarms.
Ultrasonic radar probe	1. Check the probe surface for damages such as scratches and dents. 2. Check whether the probe functions normally.
Laser radar	1. Check the laser radar for dents, scratches, or deformation. 2. Record a video with a smartphone to observe whether the laser radar is flashing normally. 3. Check whether the instrument alarms.
Front view camera and DVR camera	1. Check whether the outside of the front windshield is covered with ice, snow, fog, frost, etc. 2. Check whether the inside of the windshield or the surface of the camera is fogged or frosted, and if so, turn on the air conditioner to defrost. 3. Check whether the instrument alarms.

### General severe working conditions

- Maintenance should be observed and performed more frequently in general severe service conditions. In case of frequent driving under the following severe working conditions, it is recommended that you contact the authorized service center of DENZA Automobile at least once every three months for maintenance.
- General severe working conditions include (but are not limited to) the following:
  - Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
  - Driving on rough/muddy roads.
  - Driving in mountainous conditions.
  - Driving with a trailer
  - The maintenance items under general severe working conditions are as follows:

<b>Maintenance Item</b>	<b>Execution Working Condition</b>
Check the air filter element	General severe working conditions
Check the front, rear, left, right, upper and lower swing assemblies.	General severe working conditions
Check longitudinal EHS differential vent plug	General severe working conditions
Check the stabilizer bar assembly.	General severe working conditions
Check the front/middle/rear bottom guard assembly.	General severe working conditions
Check and replace hydraulic suspension fluid.	General severe working conditions
Check the drive halfshaft.	General severe working conditions
Check the brake assembly.	General severe working conditions
Back door movable guide block and bolt, back door fixed guide block and bolt	General severe working conditions
Check the back door lock, lock ring and bolt	General severe working conditions
Check that the back door has no limit stop and ball stud	General severe working conditions
Check whether sand enters the turbocharger.	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Check whether sand enters the oil dipstick	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Check the radiator, condenser, oil cooler, intercooler and fan.	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Replace the air conditioner filter element.	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Check the engine inlet valve.	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Check the air conditioning inlet valve.	Driving in dusty/sandy conditions.
Check the active suspension system*	General severe working conditions
Insulation detection	Driving on rough, muddy or mountainous roads.
Potential detection	General severe working conditions
Checks tire pressure sensor	Driving on rough, muddy or mountainous roads.

Maintenance Item	Execution Working Condition
Check radiator and electric fan for muds and pebbles and clean as necessary.	Driving on rough, muddy or mountainous roads.
Torque of connector and DC positive fastener of bidirectional on-board power supply assembly	Driving on rough, muddy or mountainous roads.
Replace the oil filter.	Driving in dusty or sandy conditions, or towing a trailer
Check the steering gear assembly.	Driving on rough, muddy or mountainous roads, or towing a trailer
Check the trailer hitch assembly.	Driving with a trailer
Check longitudinal EHS differential vent plug	General severe working conditions

Note: The actual maintenance items may be slightly different from those in the above table due to the severity of working conditions, and the details shall be subject to the notification of DENZA Automobile Authorized Service Center before maintenance.

#### Off-road conditions


- Off-road working conditions are more severe than general bad working conditions, and the requirements for the state of the vehicle are higher. If you need to drive off-road, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider before and after off-road to conduct a comprehensive inspection of your vehicle, so as to find problems immediately and keep your car in the best condition.

## Regular Maintenance

### Regular Maintenance

- Be sure to maintain the vehicle as per the maintenance schedule to allow it serve in the best working efficiency and reduce fault occurrence.
- Drivers can refer to the maintenance plan for scheduled maintenance intervals, depending on the odometer reading or time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- It is recommended that the maintenance be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications by a local DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- The maintenance schedule lists the maintenance items and travel time or distance based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as a normal means

of transportation to carry passengers and goods that do not exceed the vehicle load limit.

 **CAUTION**

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of DENZA.

## Vehicle Corrosion Prevention

### The most common causes of vehicle corrosion are:

- The underbody of the vehicle is covered in salt, dust, or moisture.
- The vehicle or some of its parts are exposed to high humidity and high temperature for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

### The following rules should be observed to prevent vehicle corrosion:

- Wash the vehicle frequently.
  - If driving on saline roads in winter or living in coastal areas, wash the landing area of the vehicle at least once a month, and clean the chassis and hubcap with a high-pressure water jet or steam to reduce corrosion. Wash the chassis thoroughly after winter.
- Wash the vehicle with clean water and neutral detergent.
- After driving near coastal roads, such as along the shoreline, on beaches, or if the vehicle has been driven into seawater or splashed by seawater, thoroughly rinse all components

exposed to seawater immediately with a large amount of fresh water.

- Check vehicle paint and trims.
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check cabin interior.
  - Moisture and dust buildup under the carpet can cause corrosion. Check the undersides of carpets frequently to make sure these areas are dry.
  - Special care should be taken when the vehicle is transporting chemicals, detergents, fertilizers, salt, and other substances. Such substances should be kept in appropriate containers for transportation. If spillage or leakage is found, clean immediately and keep dry.
- Use fenders.
  - Fenders protect vehicles in saline areas or on gravel roads. The bigger and closer to the ground the fender liner, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

## Paint Maintenance Tips

- Clean the vehicle in time.
- Do not perform secondary painting if there are no obvious scratches on the finish, so as to prevent mismatch or color incompatibility.
- When the vehicle is not used for a long period, it should be parked in a garage or a well-ventilated place, and special body cover should be used in winter. Choose a shady place for parking temporarily.

- Prevent strong impacts, knocks, or scratches on the paint. If the paint is scratched, dented or if it peels, it should be repaired in time, preferably by professional auto beauty provider.
- Do not touch the paint with a greasy hand or cloth. Do not place greasy tools or rub with organic solvents on the vehicle body so as to avoid chemical reactions.
- The vehicle must be waxed once a month or whenever water resistance performance of the vehicle degrades and be taken to an auto beauty provider for maintenance once every three months.
- High quality polish and wax must be used. If body finish is severely weathered, use a car cleaning polish in addition to the wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Chrome finish should be polished and waxed as well as painted finish.



#### CAUTION

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle's plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

## Vehicle Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances which will cause peeling of paint layer or corrosion of body and parts:
  - Driving along the coast.
  - Driving on a road on which anti-freeze has been scattered.
  - Driving on roads covered with coal tar.

- Resin, bird droppings and insect carcasses get stuck.
- Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings or chemicals.
- Vehicles visibly soiled by dust or mud.
- After raining.



#### CAUTION

- Before washing the vehicle, enable the washing mode\* and ensure all doors, hood, trunk, sunroof\*, and access panels are closed.
- Do not open the charge port door or fuel door to clean the interior.
- Do not wash the vehicle in hot and direct sunlight conditions.

## Manual Vehicle Washing

Wait for the vehicle to cool down sufficiently in the shade before washing it.

- Hose off loose dirt, including all mud or road salts at the bottom of the vehicle and on wheel pits.
- Wash the vehicle with neutral agents, the mixing of which should be carried out according to the manufacturer's instructions. Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.
- Rinse well—Dried washing agent forms markings. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse all parts properly.
- Dry the vehicle with a clean soft towel to prevent stay water marks. In order to prevent scratching, do not rub or apply excessive force on the paint.

## Washing vehicle with high-pressure washer

- When using high-pressure washer to wash the vehicle, follow the instructions:
  - The distance between the high-pressure water jet nozzle and the vehicle surface being cleaned should be greater than 30 cm.
  - The recommended pressure for the high-pressure water jet is less than 60 bar, and the maximum pressure is up to 100 bar.
  - Use a fan-shaped or mist spray pattern for the high-pressure washer (do not use a direct high-pressure jet spray).
  - Keep the nozzle in constant motion during rinsing. Avoid staying stationary in one spot.
- Comply with the above instructions during washing, as failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle and its components.
- Do not aim high-pressure water jets directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting and even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.

### CAUTION

- Do not use any alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents or volatile substance (gasoline, kerosene, or solvent).
- When cleaning the combination lights, do not wipe their surface with chemical solvents such as gasoline, alcohol, lacquer thinner, thinner, and carbon tetrachloride. Doing so can cause the combination light casings to crack.

### CAUTION

- It is recommended that vehicles traveling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- Do not use blades or gasoline to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trim, remove it with water and check whether the trim is damaged. Replace any seriously damaged plastic wheel trim in a timely manner. Otherwise, the trim may fall from the wheel during vehicle movement and cause an accident.
- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.
- Be careful when cleaning the chassis to avoid cutting hands.

## Automatic Vehicle Washing

When choosing an automated vehicle wash service, be aware of certain types of brushes, unfiltered rinsing water, or machine-specific rinsing procedures that may scratch the paint and affect its gloss and durability, especially darker colors. Before washing the vehicle, consulting the service provider or check equipment instructions to understand which washing procedures are the safest for the paint finish.

- Disabling AVH function before using the automated wash equipment to wash the vehicle.

- Folding side mirrors before washing the vehicle. Unfolding side mirrors before driving.

## Interior Cleaning

### REMINDER

- Prevent direct water splash onto the dashboard or floor when washing the vehicle, as these may cause electrical faults.
- Do not wash the vehicle's floor to prevent corrosion.

### Carpet

- Vacuum the carpet regularly.
- Clean the carpet regularly by scrubbing in a circular motion with a sponge or soft brush soaked in the suitable foaming detergent.
- Do not dilute the foam detergent and keep the carpet as dry as possible.

### Doors and Windows

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with any ordinary detergent.
- Check the door checks regularly. If the check lever is found with visible dust accumulation, wipe it with a wet soft cloth. Then apply 0.3 - 0.8 g of lubricant between the bracket and the pull rod riveting shaft, and between the pull rod and the sliding block.

### CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

### REMINDER

- After off-road driving in the desert, it is recommended to clean sand and stones on the force arm of the limiter and apply oil for lubrication.

### Seat Belt Maintenance

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Scrub the seat belts with a sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tear, or cut marks.

### WARNING


- Do not clean the seat belt with colorant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt's strength.

### A/C Control Panel, Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel, and Switches

- Clean the A/C control panel, car speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

### CAUTION


- Do not use any organic matter (such as solvents, kerosene, alcohol, gasoline) or acid-base solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloration, staining, or flaking.
- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.

 **CAUTION**


- If a new liquid washing agent is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. Clear any splashed liquid quickly.

**Leather**

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean, wet cloth to wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.
- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth. Dry the leather in a well-ventilated, cool place.
- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

 **CAUTION**

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile oil, alcohol, gasoline, or acid-base solution, as these will cause discoloration.
- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be taken to avoid oil stains, and trimmings must always be kept clean.

 **CAUTION**

- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink, so the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, the temperature inside the vehicle rises easily, so avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.
- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discoloration or spots.

## Self-Maintenance

### Self-Maintenance

#### Self-Maintenance Precautions

- If maintenance is to be carried out by the owner, be sure to follow the correct steps specified in this manual.
- Note that improper and incomplete maintenance will affect the use of the vehicle.
- The user manual only lists the instructions for some simple maintenance operations that the user can carry out. However, there are many items that must be done by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken in maintaining vehicles to prevent accidental injuries. Make sure to obey the followings:



## CAUTION

- Beware of short circuits, as some circuits and vehicle components carry high current or voltage.
- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint and add coolant in time.
- Only specified spark plug can be used. The use of other spark plug may result in engine performance loss or damage, or radio interference to other electric products.
- Do not reuse the spark plug by cleaning it or adjusting the spark plug gap.
- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, the engine will be excessively worn.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the engine cover, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothes and tools at a certain distance from the rotating fan. It is recommended to take off the watch, ring, or tie.
- The engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and spark plug cover are hot after driving. Do not touch them and be careful to operate. The engine oil and other fluid may be hot too.



## CAUTION

- To prevent burns, do not remove or loosen the expansion tank cap or remove the water pump, if the engine is very hot.
- Do not smoke in or near the vehicle to avoid sparks or open flames that may cause fire.
- Ensure the vehicle is turned off when working around the electric fan or radiator grill. If the engine coolant is hot or the A/C System is on with the vehicle powered on, the electric fan may automatically start.
- When working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to protect your eyes against flying or falling objects or splashing liquid.
- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. Seek medical attention immediately if discomfort persists.

### Self-check

The following items should be checked according to usage or specified mileage:

- Coolant level: The radiator expansion tank should be checked monthly.
- Windshield washer fluid: The residual amount of washer liquid in the tank should be checked monthly. When washer liquid is frequently used, the residual amount of liquid should be checked more often.
- Windshield wiper: Check the wiper condition monthly. If the wiper does not work, check it for wear, cracking, or other damage.

- Brake fluid level: Check the level monthly.
- Brake pedal: Check whether the brake pedal can be operated freely and whether the brake light switch limiting pad is aged or damaged.
- EPB switch: Check whether the switch is functional.
- Low-voltage battery: Check battery conditions and check for terminal corrosion monthly.
- A/C system: Check the operation of A/C units weekly.
- Tires: Check tire pressure monthly. Check tread wear and whether there are foreign bodies embedded.
- Windshield defrosters: Check the defroster vent monthly.
- Lights: Check the condition of headlights, position lights, tail lights, high mount brake light, turn signals, rear fog lights, brake lights and license plate light monthly.
- Doors: Check whether the trunk lid and all other doors (including rear doors) can be opened freely and locked securely.
- Horn: Check whether the horn is functioning properly.

 **WARNING**

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

## Lights

### Headlight adjustment

- Headlights are aligned before vehicle delivery. If the vehicle carries heavy load frequently, headlights may need

to be realigned. It is recommended to have the headlights aligned by DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

### Fogging of lights

- Combination lights, tail lights, and turn signals on the side mirrors may become foggy after heavy rain or cleaning. This is similar to condensation on the side window during rain. It does not mean any problem with your vehicle.
- The lights are in a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. There are heat dissipation holes on the lamp housing for convection. The greater the temperature difference is, the more active the convection is. During the convection, the moisture in the air inevitably enters a lamp. Factors such as exposure to sunlight, convection, and bulb heating can cause the moisture in the air to condense into fog or water beads easily on the lamp surface at low temperatures. This is called fogging of lights.

 **WARNING**

- The headlight bulb becomes very hot when illuminated. Grease, sweat, or scratches on the surface of the bulb glass cause the bulb to overheat and break.

 **REMINDER**

- If fog presents inside the headlight and inside the turn signals on side mirrors, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings. In that case, turn on the headlight



## REMINDER

or turn signal while driving. The fog will evaporate after a short period of driving.

- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

## Sunroof Maintenance

### Panoramic Sunroof Maintenance

- Wipe off dust or sand on the outer sealing strips of the sunroof with a damp cloth to avoid scratches, which may reduce sunroof sealing performance.
- Wipe off dust or sand on the molding edges of the front glass with a damp cloth to avoid scratches, which may reduce sunroof sealing performance.
- Clean the front of rear glass (with the front glass fully opened) frequently to avoid the accumulation of foreign materials like dust, sand, and leaves, and prevent such debris from blocking drainage holes, which could result in poor drainage of the sunroof.
- Clean the guide rails on both sides and the front flume frequently to prevent dust, sand, leaves and other debris from preventing drain holes from blockage.
- When washing the vehicle, do not aim high-pressure water jets directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.
- The sunroof freezes easily in winter. Forcibly opening the frozen sunroof will damage sealing strips or other

parts. Instead, warm up the vehicle and turn on the A/C system to accelerate the melting of snow and ice on the sunroof. Try to open the sunroof after the temperature inside reaches a certain level. Dry the residual moisture on the sunroof to prevent it from freezing.

- Do not open the sunroof fully on extremely bumpy roads. Vibration between the sunroof and the rail may deform related parts and even damage the motor. In addition, sunroof is not to be opened when it is raining or when the vehicle is being cleaned.

## Vehicle Storage

- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than a month), the following preparations should be made. Proper preparation helps prevent degradation and ensure easy use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Thoroughly clean and dry the body surface.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that carpets and mats are completely dry.
- Put the vehicle in Park.
- If the vehicle needs to be stored for a long time, jack up the vehicle body to keep the tires off the ground.
- When in normal state, the vehicle can be left in storage for a long time with the low-voltage battery remain connected, as long as it has been fully charged before. In addition, avoid waking up the vehicle frequently, or the low-voltage battery SOC may deviate too much to start the vehicle.
- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth to keep it out of contact with the windshield.

- To reduce adhesion, apply silicone lubricant to all door seals and body wax to the painted surface where the door seals meet.
- Cover the body with a breathable covering made of a "porous material" such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, can build up moisture and damage the paint.
- If possible, start the engine for a while regularly (preferably once every month). If the vehicle has been parked for a year or more, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for comprehensive maintenance.

## Hood

### Opening and Closing the Hood

1. Pull the handle on the left under the dashboard twice. The hood unlocks and opens slightly.



2. To open the hood: Lift up the hood.
3. To close the hood: When closing the hood, lower it to a height of about 30 cm above the front grille, and lower the hood with both hands to lock it.
4. After closing the hood, check whether the latch is securely locked.



### ! REMINDER

- Ensure that the hood is closed and locked firmly. Otherwise, the hood may suddenly open during driving, resulting in an accident.
- Do not force down the hood.

## Engine

### Engine Maintenance Information

- If the engine do not be started for a long time, the canister may be in saturation. The canister desorption should be regularly completed to avoid the risk of fuel leakage.
- If the vehicle is driven in EV mode for a long time, this function starts the engine and exits until the carbon tank load meets the requirements.

### Engine Cylinder Cleaning

In severe cold areas, failure to start the engine may cause engine cylinder flooding, so it is necessary to carry out cylinder cleaning:

1. When the "OK" indicator stays on, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is at a standstill, manually switch from "P" to "N".
2. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same

time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning.

## Engine Oil

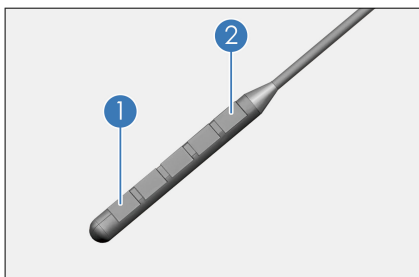
- Be sure to use the correct engine oil specification.
- Be sure to check the motor oil specifications on the packaging container when purchasing, the specifications must conform to the vehicle use.

## Recommended motor oil

- Motor oil plays an important role in ensuring the performance and service life of the engine, so high-quality and purified motor oil should be preferred. DENZA strongly suggests you to use the original engine oil.
- Motor oil consumption is related to driving habits, weather and road conditions. The new engine may have a higher fuel consumption rate.

## Check engine oil

1. Park the vehicle on a level road, start the engine to the normal operating temperature, and then stop the engine.
2. After shutdown for 10 minutes, remove the right cover plate, pull out the oil dipstick, observe the oil level and condition, and check whether the level is between ① and ②. Fill or replace motor oil as required.
3. Insert the oil dipstick back



- When the low oil pressure warning lamp is on, add motor oil in time.

## WARNING

- Be careful not to spill the motor oil on vehicle components.
- Oil, engine components and the exhaust system are high-temperature components that can cause burns. Be careful and wear protective garment when working in the engine compartment.
- Long-term exposure to or frequent contact with used motor oil can cause skin diseases. When this kind of oil sticks to the skin, it can be washed with soapy water and clean water.

## Cooling System

High temperature auxiliary water tank


- It is required that the liquid level should be between the maximum (MAX) and minimum (MIN) marker lines of the expansion tank.



Low temperature auxiliary water tank

- It is required that the liquid level should be between the Maximum (MAX) and Minimum (MIN) marker lines of the expansion tank.
- Improper coolant will damage the cooling system.

- Use coolant of the same type as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature.
- Do not add any admixture.
- Different brands and types of coolant should not be mixed.

 **CAUTION**

- Do not use tap water, so as to avoid cooling system damage.
- To avoid incompatible coolants and additives, do not apply additives like rust remover to the cooling system.

### Radiator and Condenser

If radiator and condenser are dirty or in uncertain conditions, it is recommended to bring the vehicle to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.


 **REMINDER**

- To prevent burns, do not touch the radiator or condenser when the engine is hot.
- To prevent damage to the radiator and condenser, do not operate them yourself.

### Electronic fan

- If the vehicle is driven in desert, mud, muddy water and other special road conditions for a long time, mud/sand and other foreign matters will intrude into the electronic fan. It is recommended to clean and maintain the electronic fan in time. If it is not cleaned in time, it may cause abnormal vibration of the electronic fan, resulting in abnormal noise, affecting driving comfort. In serious

cases, it may cause abnormal damage to the electronic fan.

 **CAUTION**

- The cleaning and maintenance of the electronic fan is recommended to be carried out by the professionals of the authorized dealer of DENZA. When using the air gun or water gun to clean fan, the following contents should be paid attention to:
  - Before cleaning the electronic fan, ensure that the vehicle is in cold state (or after parking for 30 minutes), and ensure that the vehicle is in power-off state.
  - When using the water gun to clean fan, try to avoid direct water flow to the fan connector and other harness connectors/interfaces.
  - After the fan is cleaned, use a dry towel to clean water stains on the harness interface/connector in time.
  - To ensure cooling effect, use an air gun to promptly clean sand off the radiator and electric fan after driving on the desert.

 **WARNING**

- During in-situ power generation or post-power generation cooling, the electric fan will be activated. Do not put your hands or any objects into the front grille area or the fan blade rotation zone to avoid injury or damage from the high-speed rotation of the electric fan blades.

## Cooling Piping

- If the vehicle is driven in desert, mud, muddy water and other special road conditions for a long time, mud/sand and other foreign matters will intrude into the electric fan. It is recommended that the piping be disassembled only after thoroughly cleaning the accumulated mud/sand from the pipe connections to prevent foreign matters from entering the piping and causing damage to the system.

## Braking System

- Check the level in the fluid tank monthly, and change the brake fluid according to the travel time and mileage specified in Maintenance Schedule.
- Be sure to use the brake fluid of the same specifications as the original brake fluid, and different types of brake fluid must not be mixed.
- It is required that the level in the fluid tank should be between "MAX" (maximum level) and "MIN" (minimum level) marks.
- If the level is below the MIN mark, check if the braking system leaks and the brake friction blocks are worn.



## Windshield Washer

- The windshield washer reservoir is located behind the left headlamp in the front compartment. Remove the cover to check the fluid level in the reservoir.
- If the windshield washer is used frequently, the level of the washer reservoir should be checked more frequently.
- High quality windshield washer fluid should be added to improve stain removal and prevent freezing in cold weather.



- When refilling the washer fluid, use a clean cloth dipped in the windshield washer fluid to clean the windshield wiper blade. This helps keep the wiper blade in good condition.
- During normal use, check the liquid level of the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly.

### CAUTION

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution or acid solution into the windshield washer fluid reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windshield washer fluid.

## A/C System

- The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be performed by professionals from a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- The following practices help ensure that the A/C system works effectively.
  - Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly. Remove leaves, insects, and dust from the front surface. These deposits will hinder the air flow and reduce the cooling effect. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
  - In cold months, turn the A/C on once a week for at least 10 minutes to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
  - If A/C cooling efficiency decreases, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

### CAUTION

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system.
- The system can recycle refrigerant to avoid environmental pollution caused by directly discharging refrigerant.

## Wiper Blade Maintenance


The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use a blade to remove ice from the windshield surface. Use a customized ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windshield surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.
- Keep the windshield surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects, or foreign bodies on the windshield surface.
- During vehicle washing and body paint maintenance, there is no need to wax the windshield, as the wax layer reflects light in bad light, affecting the line of sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special windshield wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windshield.
- To prevent excessive water pressure from damaging the blades, do not wash the blades directly with a water jet.

### Maintenance Rules

- Clean windshield and blade regularly (preferably once a week or once every two weeks).
- Wipe the wiper regularly (preferably once a day or once every two days) even if it doesn't rain.
- When using a blade to wipe the windshield, keep the windshield fully wet (when there is no rain, the washer liquid must be sprayed in advance).
- Clean the windshield with a special windshield washer fluid.
- Promptly clean mud and insect carcasses stuck to the windshield with a rag.
- When there are marks on the windshield caused by gravel, maintenance should be carried out timely (it is recommended that

windshield repair resin products should be used and the windshield should be replaced if marks are too large or too many.)

- Replace the wiper blades regularly, preferably once every six months.
- When cleaning the windshield, raise the wiper arm in advance. The specific operation method is as follows:
  1. Go to infotainment touchscreen →  → **Drive** → **Overhaul** to enable front/rear wiper check. The wipers rotate out.
  2. Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm and carefully lift the wiper arm and blade assembly.

## Tires

- For safe driving, tires must be made and sized to fit the vehicle, with good tread and standard tire pressure.
- The following pages provide details on how to check tire pressure, damage to and wear of tires, and the operating method for tire transposition.

### **WARNING**

- Using tires with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.
- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

### Tire Inflation

- Keep tires properly inflated to provide the best combination of maneuverability, tread life, and driving comfort.

- Under-inflated tires can cause uneven tire wear, affect steerability and energy consumption, and are prone to leakage due to overheating.
- Over-inflated tires reduce riding comfort and are prone to damage from uneven roads. In severe cases, the risk of tire bursting poses severe threats to the safety of the entire vehicle. Over-inflation will also cause uneven wear and tear of tires, affecting tire service life.
- The vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure gauge. When tires are cold, you can decide whether to replenish tire pressure according to the tire pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Tire pressure should be measured while tires are at ambient temperatures. This means that it should be measured at least three hours after stop. If you must drive the vehicle before the tire pressure is measured, tires can still be considered at ambient temperatures as long as the traveled distance is not more than 1.6 km.
- It is normal that tire pressure reading measured while tires are hot (after travel of several kilometers) is 30-40 kPa (0.3~0.4 bar) higher than when tires are cold. In that case, do not deflate tires in order to achieve the specified cold tire pressure reading; otherwise, the tire pressure will be insufficient.

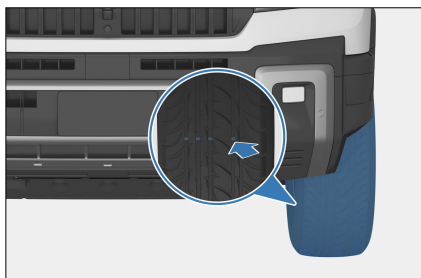
### **REMINDER**

- The recommended cold tire pressure is indicated on the label affixed to the driver's door frame.
- Tubeless tires can self-seal punctures. However, as leakage is usually very slow, the leaks should be carefully

identified as soon as the tire begins to depressurize.

## Tire Inspection

- Whenever checking tire inflation, check tires for damage, foreign body piercing and wear.
  - Replace the tire if bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tires must be replaced if any of the case happens.
  - Replace the tire if there are cracks on its side or if its fabric or cord can be seen.
  - Replace tires with excessive tread wear.
- Wear marks are cast inside tire treads. When the tread is worn at this point, a band mark is shown across the tread, indicating the tread thickness is less than 1.6 mm. The adhesion of tires worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.
- When the tread is worn to the point where the wear mark is exposed, there is serious performance loss, and the tires must be replaced.



## Maintenance

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel alignment also helps reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tire wear is found, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or

service provider and check the wheel alignment.

- Although the vehicle has been balanced in the factory, it may need to be re-balanced after running for a period of time.
- If there is some kind of continuous vibration while driving at high speeds (above 80 km/h), but not at low speeds, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider and check the tires.
- If a tire has been repaired, be sure to re-balance it.
- After installing a new tire or replacing a new wheel, always perform tire balancing.



## CAUTION

- Improper wheel balancers can become loose and fall off, which damages the vehicle or surrounding objects during vehicle travel.
- Improper wheel balancers damage the aluminium rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers.

## Tire Rotation

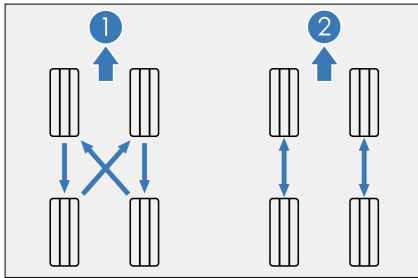
In order to make tires wear the same and prolong their service life, it is recommended to regularly (no more than 10,000 km) check the wear of the tire inner and outer tread and rotate the tires and conduct four-wheel alignment, inspection and adjustment if necessary.

- Do not rotate tires when a spare tire is used for the vehicle.
- When purchasing replacement tires, you may find that some tires are "directional", which can only be

rotated in one direction. If directional tires are used, only the front and rear wheels can be swapped when rotating tires. See the illustration.

① Non-directional tires

② Directional tires



- After tire replacement, go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for tire pressure matching.

## Replacing Tires and Wheels

- Original tires maximize performance, while providing the best combination of maneuverability, driving comfort and service life.
- It is recommended to replace with original tires at a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.
- Replacement of tires with different sizes, road ranges, rated speeds and maximum cold pressures (marked on the tire side) or mixed use of radial tires and diagonal tires can reduce braking ability, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy.
- The installation of unsuitable tires can affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- If the size of the modified tire is too large, when the wheel is adjusted to the limit position under off-road conditions, it may wear with

the mudguard, resulting in vehicle damage.

- Replace four tires at the same time whenever possible. If this is impossible or unnecessary, replace front or rear tires at the same time. Do not replace only one tire; otherwise it will seriously affect the maneuverability of the vehicle.
- ABS works by comparing wheel speed. When replacing a tire, use a tire of the same size as the original tire. The size and structure of the tire can affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheel needs to be replaced, ensure that the specifications of the new wheel match those of the original wheel. New wheels are available for purchase at DENZA authorized dealers or service providers. Please consult a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider before replacing the wheels.

### WARNING

Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle maneuverability and control.

- Do not mix radial tires, bias belted tires, or diagonal ply tires on the vehicle.
- Do not use tires with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

## Fuses

All vehicle circuits are provided with fuses to prevent short circuit or overloading.

- The under-hood fuse box is located beside the left fender of the engine compartment.

- Remove the upper cover of the front compartment fuse box, and turn over it to view the inner fuse box label.
- The dashboard fuse box is located in the shield under the dashboard.
- The fuse box in the rear compartment is located on the right cover of the luggage compartment and beside the right rear wheel cover.



#### **REMINDER**

- Do not use fuses with amperage higher than the rated ampere value or any other object to replace fuses, as this can cause serious damage or even a fire.
- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelihood of damage to the electrical system.
- If there is no spare fuse of the same amperage, use a fuse with lower amperage instead.

# 07

## **WHEN FAULTS OCCUR**

When Faults Occur.....288

# When Faults Occur

## Reflective Vest

- The reflective vest is in the tool kit. In case of emergency, always wear the reflective vest properly before you check for faults or handle accidents to ensure your safety.

## If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

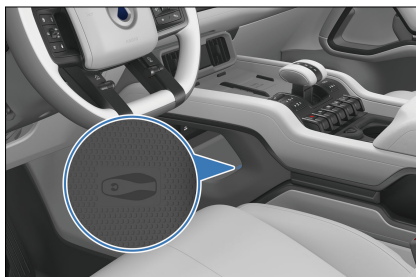
If the smart key indicator does not flash and the vehicle cannot be started using the start function, the smart key battery may be exhausted. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for battery change as soon as possible. In this case, you may start the vehicle in no power mode.

### CAUTION

- Do not place the key in areas at high temperatures.
- Magnetic fields generated by nearby radio stations, substations or airport radio transmitters may interfere with the normal operation of the smart key.
- After locking the vehicle and arming the anti-theft alarm system, keep the key away from the vehicle if you do not use the vehicle; otherwise the automatic card finding of the vehicle will consume the power of the low-voltage battery and the smart key.

1. Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.
2. Put the smart key close to the no-power sign on the auxiliary dashboard.

3. Press the START/STOP button and the brake pedal to start the vehicle.



## If a High Voltage Fault Occurs

If the vehicle experiences a fault and the instrument panel displays "Low-voltage electrical system failure. Please park safely and contact a service center," immediately pull over to a safe location and contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for assistance.

### WARNING

- If the 400 V high-voltage circuit components or orange cables are found to be damaged after a vehicle accident, do not touch them directly to avoid injury caused by electric shock or burns.
- If the traction battery is damaged, there may be a risk of delayed fire, in which case the vehicle or the damaged battery needs to be placed under surveillance in a dedicated and secure storage area to prevent fire.

## If the Vehicle Cannot Be Powered On

### Simple Checks

Before the inspection, make sure that the vehicle is started according to the correct procedures (see **P134**) and check whether the fuel is sufficient. Also, check if the spare key can start the vehicle. If it can be started, the original key may have been damaged. If all keys cannot be used, the key or smart key system may fail. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

### If the vehicle does not respond after pressing the key

1. Press and hold the microswitch for 10 seconds to see the response of the vehicle or the instrument cluster.
2. If there is no response from the vehicle or the instrument cluster, check whether the low-voltage battery connectors are tight.
3. If the low-voltage battery has been tightened, turn on the front interior lights. If the interior lights do not turn on or are dim, the low-voltage battery is low.
4. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

### If the starter motor cranks the engine at normal speed but the engine will not start:

1. Restart the vehicle.
2. If the engine cannot be started, the cause may be engine oil spillage due to repeated starts, failure of the BMS battery manager module, or failure of starting-related modules such as the generator module.
3. If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. It

is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

### Starting an Engine with Oil Spillage

- If the engine fails to start, repeatedly attempting to start it may lead to fuel leakage.
- If the engine is flooded, the following operations can be performed manually:
  1. When the "OK" indicator stays on, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is at a standstill, manually switch from "P" to "N".
  2. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning.
- If the engine has been started for five seconds and still cannot start, wait for several minutes and start it again.
- If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.

#### REMINDER

- If the engine fails to start continuously, and the prompt "Engine start failed, please drive to safe area and stop to check" is displayed on the instrument cluster, it is recommended not to restart the engine, otherwise the generator and wiring system will overheat.

### If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving

- Maintain the lane position and gradually slow down the vehicle.

Carefully drive the vehicle off the road to a safe place and turn on the hazard warning light.

- Turn on the Hazard Warning Light.
- Try to start the engine again.

## If the Engine is Overheated

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on and power loss is found, it indicates that the engine is overheated, and the following procedures should be followed:

1. Drive the vehicle away from heavy traffic and park it in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning light, press the "P" button and ensure the EPB is engaged. If the A/C is used, turn off the A/C and place a warning triangle at the corresponding position behind the vehicle according to the regulations.
2. If the "high engine coolant temperature" warning light turns on, stop the engine. If there is a sound and the coolant sprays out in the engine compartment, open the engine hood after the steam disappears. If no coolant is sprayed, confirm whether the cooling fan is working before and after the engine stops. If the fan is not working, turn off the power.

### REMINDER

- To avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until no coolant flows out. The flow of coolant indicates high pressure.
3. Check the radiator, hose and vehicle underneath for obvious coolant leakage.

### WARNING

- When the engine is running, keep hands and clothes at a certain distance from the rotating fan and engine pulley.
4. In case of coolant leakage, stop the engine immediately and contact a DENZA authorized service provider for help.
  5. If there is no obvious leakage, check the coolant expansion tank. If coolant is insufficient, be sure to wait for the engine coolant to cool down to the normal range of temperature before opening the expansion tank. While the engine is running, add coolant to the upper scale mark, tighten the cap, and then start the engine for two to three cycles (start the fan without turning on the A/C). After the coolant temperature drops to the normal range, check the coolant level again. If necessary, add more coolant to the appropriate scale. A serious loss of coolant indicates a leakage in the system. In this case, contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.

### WARNING

- To avoid serious injury from high-temperature steam and liquid ejection, do not open the expansion tank when the engine or radiator is still hot.

## If the Vehicle Needs Towing

If the vehicle needs to be towed, it is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider or a professional towing service provider, or

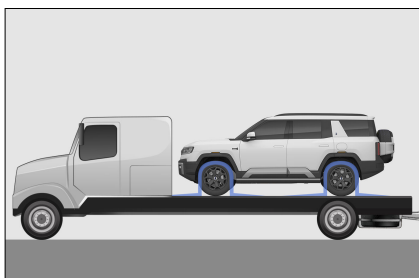
ask for assistance from the organization that provides roadside assistance.

**! CAUTION**

- The vehicle must not be towed by other vehicles using only ropes or chains.

Common towing methods include:

- Flatbed device
  - If the vehicle fails and needs towing, a flatbed is recommended. When the vehicle is being towed, keep its four wheels off the ground. Towing the vehicle on front or rear wheels alone may damage high-voltage components.



**! CAUTION**

- When moving a vehicle with a flatbed trailer, make sure that the vehicle is properly secured to prevent it from sliding back.
- It is recommended to use professional tie-down straps and tensioners, and employ the over-the-wheel method to secure the vehicle.
- When fixing the vehicle, avoid routing tie-down straps, ropes, or other securing devices through the wheels or attaching them to the chassis, suspension, or any

**! CAUTION**

- other part of the vehicle body to prevent damage.
- Ensure the vehicle's wheels are immobilized during transport to prevent potential damage.

**Tow Eye**

- The front towing hook is located below both sides of the front bumper, as shown in the figure.



- The rear towing hook is located on the right rear side of the vehicle, as shown in the figure.



- If the vehicle is stuck and underpinning accident, please contact professional rescue or call the customer service hotline.
- In an emergency, when the vehicle is rescued or the towing hook is needed to rescue other trapped vehicles, please follow the following

precautions to avoid vehicle damage or personal injury.

- The towed vehicle must be controlled by a driver inside the cabin, with the steering and braking systems in normal conditions.
- The towed vehicle must not carry any person except for the driver or tow any trailer.
- The towed vehicle must be in Neutral.
- The width and weight of the towed vehicle must not be greater than those of the towing vehicle.
- The distance between the towing and towed vehicles must be more than 4 meters but less than 10 meters.
- Both towing and towed vehicles must have their hazard warning lights on.
- The towing vehicle must be in good conditions, with a tow speed no more than 5km/h.
- Never use jerking actions to pull the vehicle.
- When towing the vehicle, ensure its surroundings are unobstructed and have enough space and no person is close to the towing device.
- When freeing the vehicle, control to make it travel in the direction of tow force. Dragging the vehicle from the side or vertically is prohibited.
- Only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used (in correct way).
- When the rear towing hook is used for rescue, it is recommended to select the shackle with the national standard D-type 8-grade 5t bearing capacity to tow the vehicle.

### **WARNING**

- If the steering or braking system of the towed vehicle fails, contact a professional rescue or call the customer service number. Do not tow the vehicle directly.

## If a Tire Goes Flat

- In case of a flat tire, slow down, keep straight, and drive off the busy road to a safe place.
- Park on solid, flat ground and avoid motorway forks.
- Ensure the vehicle is in "P" (Park) gear and the electronic parking brake is engaged.
- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tire diagonally against the flat tire.

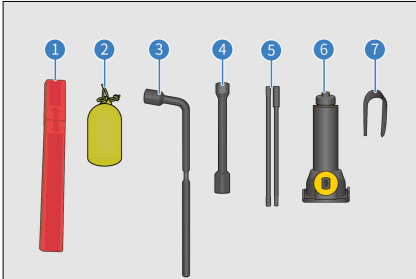
### **CAUTION**

- Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance can cause too severe damage for the tire to be repaired.

## In-Vehicle Tools

- These include:
  - ① Warning triangle
  - ② Reflective vest
  - ③ Lug nut remover
  - ④ Adapter sleeve

- ⑤ Jack handle
- ⑤ Jack
- ⑦ Trim cover removal clip



- In-vehicle tools are stored in a tool box under the trunk cover flap.
- The reflective vest is stored in the charge and discharge gun kit.

### ! REMINDER

- In an emergency where you need to service the vehicle yourself, you must know how to use these in-vehicle tools and their locations.
- After using the vehicle tools, return them to their original position to prevent loss or accidents.

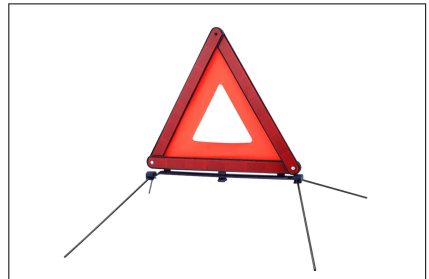
### Take the warning triangle out

- The triangle warning sign is stored inside the lower trim panel of the Trunk Lid.
- Loosen the knob on the triangle warning sign cover, open the cover, and then remove the triangle warning sign.



### Placing the warning triangle

- The warning triangle is used to warn vehicles coming from behind and to avoid collisions due to high speed or late braking.
- How to use the warning triangle:
  1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
  2. Attach the ends to form a triangle.
  3. Mount the supports as shown.



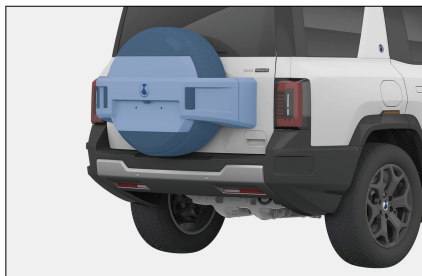
### ! REMINDER

- When parking for repair, place the warning triangle correctly as per local regulations. Ensure the red side is facing oncoming traffic to warn other drivers.
- After using the warning triangle, put it back for future use.

# Using the Spare Tire

## Spare Tire Positions

- The spare tire is stored on the back door.

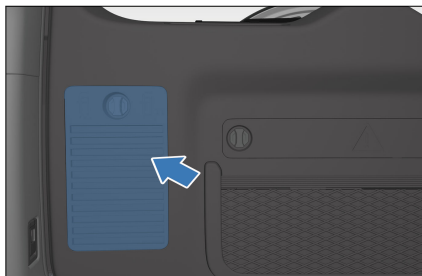


## Taking out the spare tire

1. Loosen the knob on the access panel of the back door.

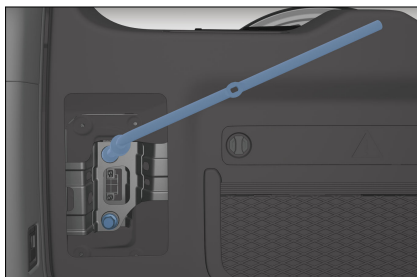


2. Remove the access panel of the back door.

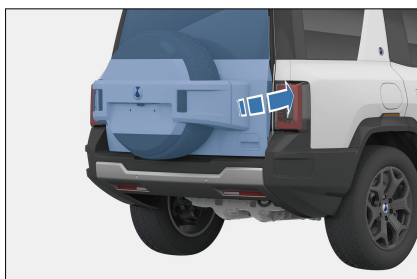


3. Unscrew the two fixing bolts on the mounting bracket of the spare tire cover

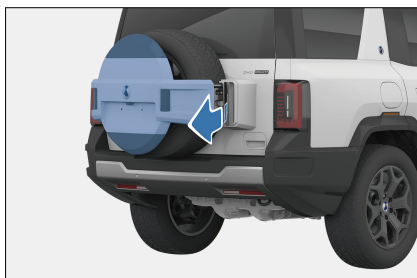
with the wheel nut wrench and adapter sleeve provided with the vehicle.



4. Closing the trunk.



5. Open the spare tire cover.

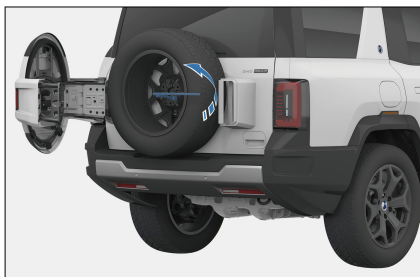


## WARNING

- Please confirm that the back door is closed before opening the spare tire cover, otherwise the vehicle may be damaged or even cause an accident.

6. Remove the spare tire retaining nut with the wheel nut wrench in

combination with the adapter socket supplied with the vehicle.



**!** REMINDER

- When using the combination tool to remove the spare tire, ensure the spare retaining nut is fully inserted into the hexagonal hole of the adapter socket. Do not partially insert it and attempt to turn it, to avoid damaging the adapter socket.

7. Removing the Spare Tire.

**Store the flat tire**

- When stowing a flat tire, secure the tire in the reverse order of the removal steps above and install the spare tire cover.

**Replacement of the Spare Tire**

**Block the wheel**

1. Wedge the tire diagonally against the flat tire to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- To do so, place the wedges in front of the front wheels or behind rear wheels.



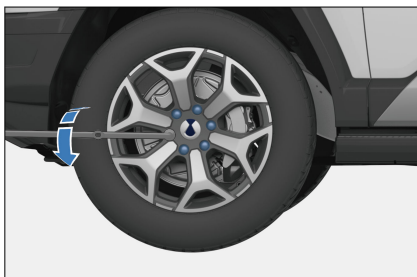
**Loosening lug nuts**

2. Remove the decorative cover of the lug nut with the lug nut cover removal clip in the vehicle tools.



3. Loosen all the lug nuts on the flat tire.

- Loosen lug nuts before raising the vehicle.
- Loosen the nuts by turning them anticlockwise.



### REMINDER

- Hold the end of the wrench and press it down, and do not allow it to slide off the nut.
- Do not remove the nut, and just loosen it by one to two turns.

### WARNING

- Do not apply motor oil or lubricant on bolts or nuts. Otherwise, loose nuts would cause the wheel to come off, causing serious accidents.

### Positioning the jack

4. Place the jack at a proper jacking point as shown in the picture.

- Ensure that the jack is placed on a flat and solid ground.



### CAUTION

- Ensure that the jack is properly raising the vehicle, otherwise it may damage the vehicle.

### WARNING

- When you jack up the vehicle, observe the following rules to reduce the likelihood of injuries:

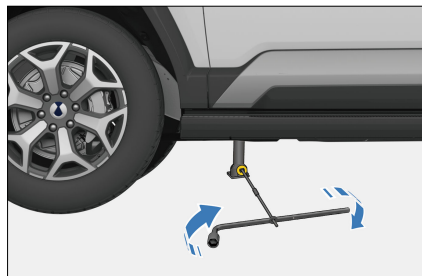
### WARNING

- Do not have any part of your body under the vehicle supported by a jack. Otherwise, personal injury may be caused.
- Do not power on the vehicle when it is being jacked up.
- Park the vehicle on a flat and solid ground, press the P button and shift into Neutral. If needed, secure the vehicle by wedging the tire diagonally against the flat tire.
- Ensure that the jack is placed at the correct jacking point. Jacking up the vehicle at an incorrect jack point will damage the vehicle or tip the vehicle off the jack, causing personal injuries.

### Jacking up the vehicle

5. After confirming that the vehicle has no passenger onboard, jack up the vehicle to a height allowing for spare tire installation.

- Installing a spare tire requires more distance from the ground than removing a deflated one.



- When lifting the vehicle, insert the jack rocker into the jack (for loose coupling) and rotate it clockwise.

- When the jack is in contact with the vehicle and begins to lift the vehicle, verify again that the jack is in the correct position.

**! WARNING**

- Never go under a vehicle supported only by a jack.

**Replacing wheels**

6. Remove wheel nuts, replace the tire, and place the replaced tire aside. Roll the spare tire to the mounting position, and align the bolts with the wheel holes. Lift the spare tire until the top bolt goes through the lug hole.

- Rotate the tire and push it in until all other bolts are through the holes.
- Before replacing the tire, remove corrosion from the mounting surface with a wire brush or other tools.

**! CAUTION**

- When you install a wheel, ensure that the mounting position is contacted well, otherwise loose lug nuts will cause the wheel to come off during driving.

**Reinstalling lug nuts**

7. Reinstall all lug nuts.

- When reinstalling lug nuts, tighten the lug nuts by hand to the greatest extent, then push the wheel backward and tighten the lug nuts further.

**! WARNING**

- Do not apply engine oil or lubricant on bolts or nuts, as this can over-tighten the nuts and thus damage the bolts. The loose nuts so caused would lead

**! WARNING**

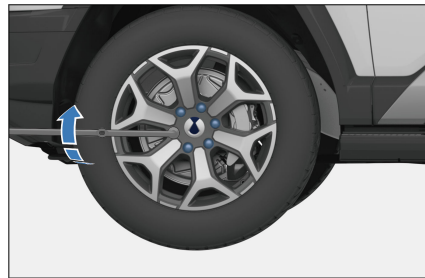
the wheels to come off, causing serious accidents.

- Clean the motor oil or lubricant on bolts or nuts.
- The conical surface of the nut should be inward. If the nut is installed reversely, it may cause serious accidents.

**Lowering the vehicle**

8. Lower the vehicle completely, tighten the lug nuts, and install the decorative cover for lug nuts.

- Lower the vehicle by twiddling the jack lever counterclockwise.



**! REMINDER**

- Tighten the nuts with a lug nut wrench. Do not use other tools or any lever other than your hands, such as hammers, tubes, or feet.
- Make sure the wrench is securely clamping around the nut.
- Tighten the nuts in the sequence shown, each a bit a time. Repeat the action until all nuts are tightened.



### CAUTION

- Before lowering the vehicle, make sure that no part of your body and no person in the vicinity of the vehicle will be injured by the vehicle's descent.
- Lug nuts must be torqued to 140 N · m after wheel replacement. Otherwise, loose nuts would cause the wheel to come off, causing serious accidents.

### After wheel replacement

9. Check the pressure of the replaced tire.

- Adjust the tire pressure to the specification. If the pressure is lower than the specification, slowly drive to a nearby service station to inflate the tire to the correct pressure value.
- Be sure to mount the tire valve cap, otherwise dust and moisture will enter the valve stem and cause air leakage. If the valve cap is lost, use a new one as soon as possible.

10. Properly store all tools, the jack, and the flat tire.

- Use a torque wrench to tighten all lug nuts to the specified torque value after replacing the wheel.
- Have the flat tire repaired by a technician.

### WARNING

- In the whole process of replacing the spare tire, do not open the back door and the spare tire cover at the same time, otherwise the vehicle will be damaged or even cause an accident.

### REMINDER

- Before driving, you should verify that all tools, jacks, and flat tires are kept in a storage area to reduce the possibility of personal injury in case of collision or emergency braking.
- Observe the maximum speed limit of 80km/h when using a non-full-size spare wheel on the road.
- Do not use the spare tire for a long time. It is recommended to go to a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider for tire repair and replacement as soon as possible.

# 08

## TECHNICAL DATA

Vehicle Data.....	300
Information.....	304
Declarations of Conformity.....	308

# Vehicle Data

## Specifications

### Dimensions

Item	Parameter
Length (mm)	5195
Width (mm)	1994
Height (mm)	1905
Wheelbase (mm)	2920
Front track (mm)	1670
Rear track (mm)	1670
Front overhang (mm)	950
Rear overhang (mm)	1325
Approach angle (°)	30
Departure angle (°)	29/21 (with trailer crossbeam)

### Vehicle mass

Item	Parameter	
Model	Six seaters	Seven seaters
Curb weight (kg)	3305	3305
Front axle load (kg)	1640	1640
Rear axle load (kg)	1665	1665
Maximum allowable total mass (kg)	3947	3947
Front axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	1760	1760
Rear axle load at maximum allowable total mass (kg)	2227	2227
Maximum front axle weight (kg)	1760	1760

Item	Parameter	
Maximum rear axle weight (kg)	2227	2227
Number of occupants (persons)	6	7

### Engine

Item	Parameter	
Engine model	BYD487ZQD	
Engine type	Turbocharged engine	
Displacement (mL)	1997	
Maximum net power (kW/rpm)	180/5000	
Maximum torque (N · m/rpm)	380/(1600-4000)	
Emission standard	China 6b, Euro 5	

### Drive motor

Item	Parameter	
Model	Front: TZ220XYAB	
	Rear: TZ200XYW	
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor	
Drive type	AWD	
Rated power/speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m)	Front: 80/5093/150	
	Rear: 80/6367/120	
Peak power/revolving speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m)	Front: 200/18000/360	
	Rear: 300/18000/400	

### Vehicle power performance and economic efficiency

Item	Parameter	
WLTC Fuel consumption (L/100 km)	1.79	
Maximum design speed (km/h)	180	
Maximum gradeability (%)	100	

## Wheels and tires

Item	Parameter
Tire specification	275/55R20
Tire pressure (kPa)	280
Wheel dynamic balance requirement (g)	< 10

## Wheel alignment values (at curb weight)

Item	Parameter
Front camber (°)	-0.34±0.5
Total front wheel toe-in (°)	0.16±0.16
Kingpin inclination angle (°)	12.77±0.75
Kingpin caster angle (°)	5.55±0.75
Rear camber (°)	0.06±0.5
Total rear wheel toe-in (°)	0.16±0.16

## Braking system

Item	Parameter
Free stroke of brake pedal (mm)	1-5
Front brake disc standard thickness (mm)	34
Front brake disc minimum thickness (mm)	33.9
Rear brake disc standard thickness (mm)	25
Rear brake disc minimum thickness (mm)	24.9
Front friction plate standard thickness (mm)	9.8
Front friction plate minimum thickness (mm)	9.6
Rear friction plate standard thickness (mm)	12
Rear friction plate minimum thickness (mm)	11.8

## High-voltage battery

Item	Parameter
Type	Lithium iron phosphate battery

Item	Parameter
High-voltage battery rated capacity (Ah)	60

### Seats

Item	Parameter
Forward and backward moving spaces for front seats (seat cushion depth measured)	50 mm forward from the farthest slide rail stroke
Seatback angle of front seats (cushion depth measured)	23°
Normal service conditions of front driver seatback	13.5° forward and 46° backward from the designed position; slide rail: 200mm forward and 50mm backward; slide rail inclination: 4.5°
Normal service conditions of front passenger seatback	13.5° forward and 76° backward from the designed position; slide rail: 200mm forward and 50mm backward; slide rail inclination: 4.5°
Forward and backward moving spaces for second-row seats (seat cushion depth measured)	50 mm forward from the farthest slide rail stroke
Seatback angle of second-row seats (cushion depth measured)	23°
Normal use position of the second-row seatbacks	Seven seaters: 10° forward and 18° backward from the designed position, forward 110 mm and backward 50 mm on the horizontal guide rail Six seaters: 10° forward and 19° backward from the designed position, forward 110 mm and backward 40 mm on the horizontal guide rail
Forward and backward moving spaces for rear seat (seat cushion depth measured)	No slide rail
Seatback angle of rear seats (cushion depth measured)	20°
Normal service conditions of rear seatbacks	107° forward and 7° backward from the designed position; no slide rail

### Recommended oil type and amount

Item	Parameter
Engine oil type	C5 0W-20
Engine oil amount (L)	Initial fill: $6.1 \pm 0.1$ ; maintenance with oil filter replacement: $5.4 \pm 0.1$ ; maintenance without oil filter replacement: $5.1 \pm 0.1$
EHS special transmission gear oil type	EHSF-2LV
EHS special transmission gear oil amount (L)	5.7
EHS differential gear oil type	GL-5-80W-90
EHS differential gear oil amount (L)	1.3
Rear drive electric assembly gear oil type	EHSF-2LV
Rear drive electric assembly gear oil amount (L)	2.8
Brake fluid type	DOT4
Brake fluid amount (L)	1.2
Engine coolant type	Ethylene glycol coolant. Antifreeze freezing point: $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$
Engine coolant amount (L)	$10 \pm 0.5$
Motor controller coolant type	Ethylene glycol coolant. Antifreeze freezing point: $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$
Motor coolant amount (L)	$10.6 \pm 0.5$
Active suspension hydraulic oil type	5045CY137 (red)
Active suspension hydraulic oil amount (L)	$6.9 \pm 0.5$

### CAUTION

- The recommended oil types have been tested and approved by BYD. Using other oil types may compromise vehicle performance, and could cause malfunctions or damage to components.

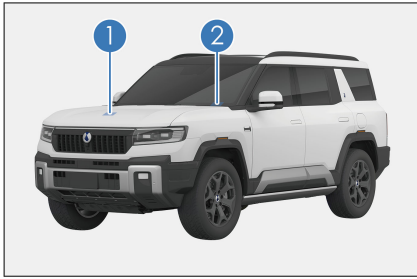
## Information

### Vehicle Identification

#### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

#### Positions of attached VIN

- ① On the metal plate of the front hood inner panel
- ② On the lower left corner of the windshield pillar dashboard



### VIN engraving position

Engraved on the outer plate on the right front section of frame longitudinal beam

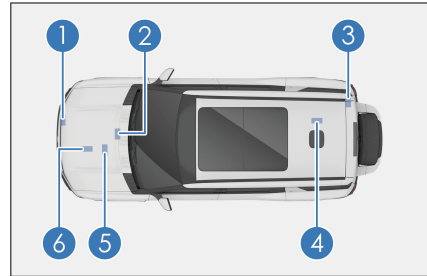
After connecting the VDS, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) can be found in the upper right corner of the screen for the corresponding model. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.



### Model and Serial Number of Engine and Drive Motor

- ① The model and serial number of the front drive motor are attached on the sheet metal of the hood inner panel.
- ② The model and number of the front drive motor are engraved on the bottom of the front drive assembly rear box
- ③ The model and serial number of rear drive motor are attached on the right part of the sheet metal surface on the trunk lid.
- ④ The model and number of the rear drive motor are engraved on the bottom

of the front box on the side of the oil drain hole of the rear drive assembly.



- ⑤ The model and serial number of the engine are engraved on the assembly cylinder.
- ⑥ The model and serial number of the engine are attached on the engine intake manifold.

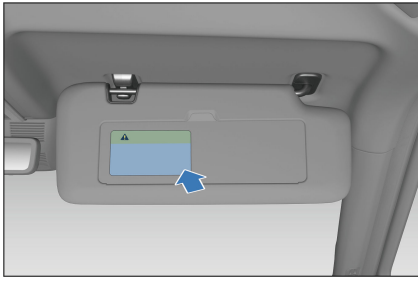
### Vehicle Nameplate

The vehicle nameplate is located under the right B-pillar (position may vary by country; the figure shows the right B-pillar location).



### Warning Labels

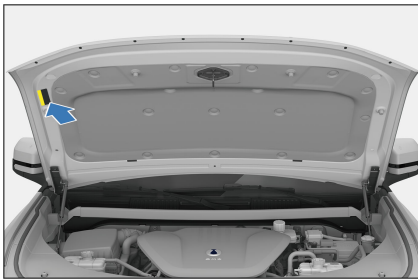
The airbag warning label is printed on the right sun visor.



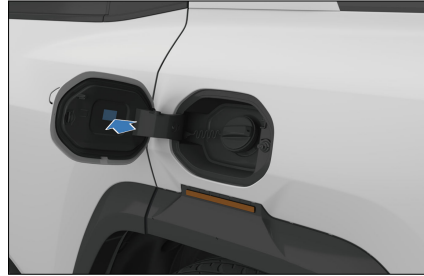
The tire pressure label is affixed below the left side airbag warning plate.



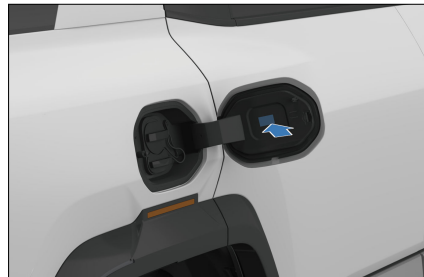
① A/C system and cooling fan label



The gasoline indication label is attached on the inner side of the fuel door.








The charging connector use tip label is attached to the inner surface of the charge port door.



### Warning Lables on Support Mechanisms

Support mechanisms on this vehicle can be dangerous. Do not disassemble or service them yourself. Lables on these products are defined as follows:

Lable	Definition
	Warning
	Pressurized cylinder
	Refer to owner's manual

Lable	Definition
	No open flame
	Not to be serviced by users
	Recycle separately (Note: It is recommended to contact a DENZA authorized dealer or service provider.)
	No shaking or cranking
	No stepping on

## Transponder Mounting Position

The transponder mounting position is located in the upper right of the front windshield.



### CAUTION

- Do not overlap the sticker transponder with the glass frame or other objects.

# Declarations of Conformity

## Declarations of Conformity

### Radio Frequency Statement

---



Your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the RF Modules are in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following Internet address: <https://cn-prod.byd.com/eu/eu-doc>.

---

### Smart Key Statement

---



Brazil

Model: HT4-92

Certificate ID: 01535-25-04522

This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and does not cause interference to duly authorized systems.

---



The United Arab Emirates

Model: HT4-92

---

### MmWave Radars Statement

---



EU countries

Certificate ID: T.2021.08.0001

---



Japan

Certificate ID: 219-210015

---



Brazil

Certificate ID: 15210-21-03745

This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and does

not cause interference to duly authorized systems.

---



## Special Characters

后风窗玻璃刮水器与洗涤剂..... 86

## Numerics

12V Auxiliary Power..... 253

## A

A/C Control Panel, Speakers,  
Dashboard, Control Panel, and  
Switches..... 273  
A/C Settings Interface..... 240  
A/C System Maintenance..... 282  
Access..... 69  
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System  
(AVAS)..... 212  
Adjusting Front Seats..... 72  
Adjusting Head Supports..... 77  
Adjusting rear seats..... 77  
Adjusting Seats\* ..... 80  
Adjusting Second-Row Seats..... 75  
Adjusting Steering Wheel with Power  
..... 84  
Airbag Overview..... 16  
Airbag Triggering Conditions..... 20  
Ambient Lights..... 99  
Anti-lock Braking System..... 223  
Anti-pinch Function..... 97  
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 33  
Around View Monitor (AVM) System  
..... 213  
Auto Power On/Off..... 134  
Automatic Anti-glare Interior  
Rearview Mirror..... 88  
Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle  
Start..... 160  
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)..... 162  
Automatic Vehicle Washing..... 272  
Auxiliary Handles..... 252

## B

Blind Spot Detection (BSD)..... 200  
Bluetooth Digital Key..... 57  
Brake Fluid..... 281  
Break-in Period..... 124  
Burst Mode..... 149

## C

Carpet..... 273  
Carry luggage in the trunk..... 130  
Carrying Luggage..... 129  
Carrying Luggage in the Passenger  
Area..... 130  
Central Locking..... 94  
Charge Port Anti-theft Lock..... 119  
Charge/Discharge Indicator..... 112  
Charging Precautions..... 104  
Charging Safety Warnings..... 104  
Check Before Charging..... 107  
Child Restraint Systems..... 24  
Coolant..... 279  
Cooling Piping..... 281  
Custom Mode..... 146  
Custom on Interior Door..... 95

## D

Data Collection and Processing..... 34  
Declarations of Conformity..... 308  
Differential Lock..... 149  
Direct Tire Pressure Monitoring  
System..... 211  
Discharging Equipment..... 114  
Disclosure of Personal Data to  
Authorities..... 36  
Door Bins..... 246  
Doors and Windows..... 273  
Driver Monitoring Systems..... 219  
Driving..... 135  
Driving Precautions..... 163  
Driving Safety Precautions..... 125  
Driving Safety Systems..... 220

Driving with Low Fuel Consumption  
..... 156

## E

Electronic Child Protection Lock.... 71  
Electronic fan..... 280  
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).... 159  
Emergency Braking When Brake  
Pedal Fails..... 160  
Emergency Locking Retractor..... 12  
Emergency Trunk Releasing from the  
Inside..... 67  
Emergency Unlocking of the Charge  
Port..... 120  
Emergency Vehicle Locking with  
Mechanical Key..... 68  
Engaging EPB Automatically..... 159  
Engaging EPB manually..... 159  
Engine Cylinder Cleaning..... 278  
Engine Maintenance Information 278  
Engine Oil..... 279  
EPB Operating Sound..... 161  
EPB System Indicator..... 161  
EPB Trailer Mode..... 161

## F

Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key  
..... 64  
Fire Prevention..... 131  
Folding Side Mirrors..... 89  
Front 12 V Power Outlet..... 253  
Front A/C Operation Interface..... 241  
Front A/C Panel..... 240  
Front interior light switches..... 98  
Front Seat Cup Holder..... 247  
Front vents..... 244  
Front Windshield Wipers and Washer  
..... 85  
Front-Row USB Ports..... 252  
Fuel Selection..... 126  
Function Definitions..... 241  
Fuse Location..... 285

## G

Gear Shift Controls..... 157  
General Charging Troubleshooting....  
106  
Glasses Case..... 246  
Glove Box..... 246

## H

Hazard Warning Light Switch..... 96  
Head-up Display (HUD)\* ..... 210  
High-Voltage Battery..... 121  
High-Voltage Battery Maintenance....  
121

## I

If a High Voltage Fault Occurs..... 288  
If a Tire Goes Flat..... 292  
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted 288  
If the Engine Fails to Start While  
Driving..... 289  
If the Engine is Overheated..... 290  
If the Vehicle Needs Towing..... 290  
In-situ Recharge..... 117  
Indicators/Warning Lights..... 43  
Infotainment System..... 231  
Installing Child Restraint Systems. 25  
Intelligent Charging..... 123  
Intelligent High Beam Control (IHBC)  
..... 209  
Intelligent Hydraulic Control System  
(YunNian-P)..... 150  
Intelligent Power Braking System 220  
Interior Cleaning..... 273  
Introduction of Dual-Mode System  
Working Mode..... 29

## K

Keys..... 56  
Kick-Down Function\* ..... 137

## L

LCD Instrument Cluster.....	42
Leather.....	274
Light Switches.....	90
Lights.....	276
Locking/Unlocking the Trunk.....	66
Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking.....	68
Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key.....	62
Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch .....	65
Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key .....	63
Low-Voltage Battery.....	122

## M

Maintenance Instructions for Special Working Conditions.....	265
Maintenance Plan.....	258
Maintenance Schedule.....	258
Manual Vehicle Washing.....	271
Mechanical Key.....	57
Memory System.....	73
Mode Memory.....	118
Model and Serial Number of Engine and Drive Motor.....	305

## N

NFC Digital Key.....	59
Night vision system*.....	224

## O

Odometer Switch.....	96
Off-road Mode.....	137
Opening the Hood.....	278
Opening with Door Control Button	63
Opening with Interior Door Handle .....	63
Opening/Closing Sunshade.....	97

Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts.....	53
--	----

## P

Paint Maintenance Tips.....	270
Panoramic Sunroof Maintenance	277
Panoramic sunroof switch.....	96
Parking Assist System*.....	215
Power Generation by Pressing the Accelerator Pedal.....	118
Power Window Switches.....	93
Preparations Before Driving.....	136
Pretensioner and Force Limiter Function*.....	12

## R

Radiator and Condenser.....	280
Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key.....	64
Rear Interior Light Switches.....	98
Rear row 12V Power Outlet.....	253
Rear-Row USB Ports.....	253
Recycling the High-Voltage Battery .....	122
Reflective Vest.....	288
Refrigerator.....	248
Refueling.....	127
Regenerative Braking Settings.....	118
Regular Maintenance Precautions.... 269	
Replacing Tires and Wheels.....	285
Replacing Wiper Blades.....	87
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning.....	131
Roof Rack.....	130
Roof Vents.....	244

## S

Safety Check before Driving.....	136
Safety Handles.....	251

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life.....	128
Scenario Mode.....	234
Seat Belt Maintenance.....	273
Seat Belt Overview.....	12
Seat Belt Pretensioning by Motor*.	12
Seat Belt Reminders.....	15
Seat Massage Switch.....	80
Seat Mode.....	81
Seat Precautions.....	71
Seat Ventilation.....	80
Seatback Pockets.....	246
Second-Row Seat Cup Holder.....	247
Second-Row USB Ports.....	252
Selecting Working Mode of the Dual-Mode System.....	30
Self-check.....	275
Self-Maintenance Precautions.....	274
Sentry Mode.....	37
Side Interior Light Switch.....	98
Side Mirror Adjustment Buttons....	90
Side Mirror Defrosters.....	90
Simple Checks.....	289
Smart Access and Start System.....	69
Smart Charging.....	113
Snow Chains.....	133
Specifications.....	300
Sport+ mode.....	145
Start-up.....	69
Starting an Engine with Oil Spillage.....	289
Starting the Vehicle.....	134
Steering Assist Mode Settings.....	85
Steering Wheel Switches.....	82
Streaming Interior Rearview Mirror*.....	88
Suggestions for Vehicle Use and Storage.....	126
Sun Visor.....	251
Sunroof initialization method.....	98

## T

Target SOC setting.....	117
Target SOC Setting.....	117
The P Parking Switch.....	158

Tire inflation.....	283
Tire Inspection.....	284
Tire Instructions.....	283
Tire Maintenance.....	284
Tow Eye.....	291
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) System.....	193
Trailer Towing.....	124
Transponder Mounting.....	307
Trunk switches.....	99

## U

U-turn.....	147
Usage Precautions.....	243
Using AC Charger (AC Charging Port)*.....	110
Using DC Charging Piles (DC Charging Port)*.....	111
Using Mode 2 Charging Cable.....	107
Using Seat Belts.....	13
Using the Spare Tire.....	294

## V

V2L External Discharging.....	115
Vehicle Cleaning.....	271
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention.....	270
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).....	304
Vehicle Nameplate.....	305
Vehicle Storage Instructions.....	277

## W

Wading mode.....	144
Waking up the Vehicle from Low SOC.....	122
Warning Labels.....	305
Warning Lights/Indicators Description.....	46
Window Control Switch on Passenger's Side.....	95
Windshield Washer.....	281

Winter Driving Precautions.....	164
Wiper Blade Maintenance.....	282
Wiper Blades.....	282
Wipers.....	87
Wireless Phone Charger.....	254
Working Mode Precautions of Dual- Mode System.....	31



# Abbreviations

## Abbreviations

<b>Terminology</b>	<b>Full Name</b>	<b>Terminology</b>	<b>Full Name</b>
ECU	Electronic Control Unit	EV	Electric Vehicle
HEV	Hybrid Electric Vehicles	ECO	Ecology, Conservation, Optimization
SOC	State of Charge	EDR	Event Data Recorder
AVM	Automatic Vehicle Monitoring	FCTA	Front Cross Traffic Alert
FCTB	Front Cross Traffic Braking	ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
AEB	Automatic Emergency Braking	AVH	Auto Vehicle Hold
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control	FCW	Forward Collision Warning
RCTB	Rear Cross Traffic Braking	HUD	Head-Up Display
AVAS	Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	ABS	Antilock Braking System
VDC	Vehicle Dynamics Control	TCS	Traction Control System
HHC	Hill Hold Control	HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assist
CDP	Controller Deceleration Parking	HDC	Hill Descent Control
OTA	Over-the-Air	USB	Universal Serial Bus
MAX	Maximum	MIN	Minimum
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number		

